



Online User's Guide

DCP-B7548W

DCP-B7558W

DCP-B7578DW

DCP-B7608W

DCP-B7628DW

DCP-B7638DN

DCP-B7648DW

DCP-B7658DW

!CAUTION Before using this product, read carefully these instructions for correct operation.
Keep the User's Guide in a secure place for future reference.

Table of Contents

Before You Use Your Machine	1
Definitions of Notes	2
Trademarks	3
Open Source Licensing	4
Copyright and License	5
Important Notes.....	6
Introduction to Your Machine.....	7
Before Using Your Machine	8
Control Panel Overview	9
Control Panel Overview	11
Touchscreen LCD Overview.....	12
How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD	14
Set the Main Home Screen	16
Settings Screen Overview	17
How to Enter Text on Your Machine	18
Access Brother Utilities (Windows)	20
Uninstall the Software and Drivers (Windows).....	21
Access Brother iPrint&Scan (Windows/Mac)	22
Input/Output Port Locations on Your Machine	23
Paper Handling.....	24
Load Paper.....	25
Load Paper in the Paper Tray	26
Load and Print Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper and Bond Paper in the Manual Feed Slot	30
Load and Print on Thick Paper and Labels Using the Manual Feed Slot.....	32
Load and Print on Envelopes in the Manual Feed Slot	34
Paper Settings.....	36
Change the Paper Size and Paper Type.....	37
Change the Check Paper Setting.....	38
Recommended Print Media.....	39
Load Documents	40
Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	41
Load Documents on the Scanner Glass.....	42
Unscannable and Unprintable Areas	43
Using Special Paper.....	44
Print.....	45
Print from Your Computer (Windows).....	46
Print a Document (Windows).....	47
Print on Both Sides of the Paper (Windows)	49
Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)	52
Print Settings (Windows)	53
Print a Document Using the BR-Script3 Printer Driver (PostScript® 3™ Language Emulation) (Windows)	57
Monitor the Status of the Machine from Your Computer (Windows)	58
Print from Your Computer (Mac)	59

Print Using AirPrint	60
Load and Print on Envelopes in the Manual Feed Slot	61
Change Print Settings Using the Control Panel	63
Cancel a Print Job	64
Test Print	65
Scan	66
Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine	67
Scan Photos and Graphics	68
Scan Single or Multiple Pages to a Folder in a Single PDF File	70
Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR)	72
Save Scanned Data as an Email Attachment	74
Scan to FTP	76
Scan to Network (Windows)	80
Use the Web Services Protocol for Network Scanning (Windows 10 and Windows 11)	84
Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan	88
Configure Certificates for Signed PDFs	89
Disable Scanning from Your Computer	91
Scan from Your Computer (Windows)	92
Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan (Windows/Mac)	93
Scan Using Nuance™ PaperPort™ 14SE or Other Windows Applications	94
Scan Using Windows Fax and Scan	99
Scan from Your Computer (Mac)	103
Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management	104
Set the Scan File Name Using Web Based Management	105
Copy	106
Copy on One Side of the Paper (1-sided)	107
Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided)	109
Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images	111
Make N in 1 Copies Using the Page Layout Feature	113
Sort Copies	115
Copy an ID Card	116
Copy an ID Card or Bills	118
Copy Options	119
Network	122
Supported Basic Network Features	123
Configure Network Settings	124
Configure Network Details Using the Control Panel	125
Wireless Network Settings	126
Use the Wireless Network	127
Use Wi-Fi Direct®	145
Enable/Disable Wireless LAN	150
Print the WLAN Report	151
Network Features	155
Enable/Disable Web Based Management Using the Control Panel	156
Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using Web Based Management	157
Print the Network Configuration Report	158
Synchronise Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management	159

Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings.....	162
Security	163
Before Using Network Security Features	164
Disable Unnecessary Protocols	165
Configure Certificates for Device Security	166
Supported Security Certificate Features	167
How to Create and Install a Certificate	168
Create a Self-signed Certificate	169
Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)	170
Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key	174
Import and Export a CA Certificate.....	177
Manage Multiple Certificates	180
Use SSL/TLS	181
Introduction to SSL/TLS	182
Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS.....	185
Print Documents Securely Using SSL/TLS	189
Use SNMPv3.....	191
Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SNMPv3	192
Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication	193
What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?	194
Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser).....	195
IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods	197
Use Secure Function Lock 3.0.....	198
Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0	199
Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management	200
Scan Using Secure Function Lock 3.0	201
Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0	202
Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features.....	203
Register a new ID Card Using the Machine's Control Panel	204
Send an Email Securely.....	205
Configure Email Sending Using Web Based Management	206
Send an Email with User Authentication	207
Send an Email Securely Using SSL/TLS	208
Store Print Log to Network	209
Store Print Log to Network Overview	210
Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management.....	211
Use the Store Print Log to Network's Error Detection Setting.....	213
Use Store Print Log to Network with Secure Function Lock 3.0.....	215
Lock the Machine Settings from the Control Panel	216
Use Global Network Detection Features.....	217
Enable Global IP Address Detection	218
Block Communications from the Global Network	219
Mobile Connect	220
AirPrint	221
AirPrint Overview.....	222

Before Using AirPrint (macOS)	223
Print Using AirPrint	224
Scan Using AirPrint (macOS)	227
Mopria™ Print Service and Mopria™ Scan	228
Brother Mobile Connect	229
WeChat Print	230
Troubleshooting	231
Error and Maintenance Messages	232
Document Jams	240
Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit	241
Document is Jammed under the Document Cover	242
Remove Small Scraps of Paper Jammed in the ADF	243
Paper Jams	244
Clear Paper Jams	245
Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray	246
Paper is Jammed in the Output Paper Tray	248
Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine	249
Paper is Jammed inside the Machine	251
Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray	253
Printing Problems	255
Improve the Print Quality	258
Network Problems	263
Error Messages	264
Use the Network Connection Repair Tool (Windows)	266
Check Your Machine's Network Settings	267
If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine's Network	268
AirPrint Problems	274
Other Problems	275
Check the Machine Information	277
Update Your Machine's Firmware	278
Reset Your Machine	279
Reset Functions Overview	281
Routine Maintenance	282
Replace Supplies	283
Replace the Toner Cartridge	284
Replace the Drum Unit	287
Reset the Drum Counter	290
Clean the Machine	291
Clean the Scanner	293
Clean the Touchscreen LCD	294
Clean the Corona Wire	295
Clean the Drum Unit	296
Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers	302
Check the Remaining Part Life	303
Pack and Ship Your Machine	304
Machine Settings	306
Check Your Machine's Password	307








Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel	308
In the Event of Power Failure (Memory Storage)	309
General Settings	310
Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut	320
Print Reports	323
Settings and Features Tables	326
Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management	345
What is Web Based Management?	346
Access Web Based Management	347
Change the Login Password Using Web Based Management	349
Appendix	350
Specifications	351
Supplies	358
Notice	359
Brother Help and Customer Support	360

Before You Use Your Machine

- [Definitions of Notes](#)
- [Trademarks](#)
- [Open Source Licensing](#)
- [Copyright and License](#)
- [Important Notes](#)

Definitions of Notes

We use the following symbols and conventions throughout this User's Guide:

 WARNING	WARNING indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injuries.
 CAUTION	CAUTION indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injuries.
IMPORTANT	IMPORTANT indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to property or loss of product functionality.
NOTE	NOTE specifies the operating environment, conditions for installation, or special conditions of use.
	Tips icons indicate helpful hints and supplementary information.
	Electrical Hazard icons alert you to possible electrical shock.
	Fire Hazard icons alert you to the possibility of a fire.
	Hot Surface icons warn you not to touch hot machine parts.
	Prohibition icons indicate actions you must not perform.
Bold	Bold style identifies buttons on the machine's control panel or computer screen.
<i>Italics</i>	Italicised style emphasises an important point or refers you to a related topic.
Courier New	Courier New font identifies messages shown on the machine's LCD.



Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)

Trademarks

Apple, App Store, AirPrint, the AirPrint logo, Mac, macOS, iPadOS, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Nuance and PaperPort are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe®, Reader®, PostScript and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Alliance®, and Wi-Fi Direct® are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

WPA™, WPA2™, WPA3™, Wi-Fi CERTIFIED, and Wi-Fi Protected Setup are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Android and Google Play are trademarks of Google LLC. Use of these trademarks is subject to Google Permissions.

Mopria™ and the Mopria™ Logo are registered and/or unregistered trademarks and service marks of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorised use is strictly prohibited.

The Bluetooth® word mark is a registered trademark owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Brother Industries, Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software Licence Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

Software Trademarks

FlashFX® is a registered trademark of Datalight, Inc.

FlashFX® Pro™ is a trademark of Datalight, Inc.

FlashFX® Tera™ is a trademark of Datalight, Inc.

Reliance™ is a trademark of Datalight, Inc.

Reliance Nitro™ is a trademark of Datalight, Inc.

Datalight® is a registered trademark of Datalight, Inc.

Any trade names and product names of companies appearing on Brother products, related documents and any other materials are all trademarks or registered trademarks of those respective companies.

✓ Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)

Open Source Licensing

This product includes open source software.

To view Open Source Licensing Remarks and Copyright Information, go to your model's **Manuals** page at support.brother.com/manuals.



Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)
-

Copyright and License

©2023 Brother Industries, Ltd. All rights reserved.

This product includes software developed by the following vendors:

This product includes the "KASAGO TCP/IP" software developed by ZUKEN ELMIC, Inc.

Copyright 1989-2020 Datalight, Inc., All Rights Reserved.

FlashFX® Copyright 1998-2020 Datalight, Inc.



Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)
-

Important Notes

- Check support.brother.com/downloads for Brother driver and software updates.
- To keep your machine performance up to date, check support.brother.com/downloads for the latest firmware upgrade. Otherwise, some of your machine's functions may not be available.
- Do not use this product outside the country of purchase as it may violate the wireless telecommunication and power regulations of that country.
- Before giving your machine to anyone else, replacing it, or disposing of it, we strongly recommend resetting it to its factory settings to remove all personal information.
- Windows 10 in this document represents Windows 10 Home, Windows 10 Pro, Windows 10 Education, and Windows 10 Enterprise.
- Windows 11 in this document represents Windows 11 Home, Windows 11 Pro, Windows 11 Education, and Windows 11 Enterprise.
- In this User's Guide, the LCD messages of the DCP-B7658DW are used unless otherwise specified.
- In this User's Guide, the illustrations of the DCP-B7658DW are used unless otherwise specified.
- The screens or images in this User's Guide are for illustration purposes only and may differ from those of the actual products.
- Unless otherwise specified, the screens in this manual are from Windows 10. Screens on your computer may vary depending on your operating system.
- The contents of this document and the specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.



Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)

Introduction to Your Machine

- [Before Using Your Machine](#)
- [Control Panel Overview](#)
- [Control Panel Overview](#)
- [Touchscreen LCD Overview](#)
- [How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD](#)
- [Set the Main Home Screen](#)
- [Settings Screen Overview](#)
- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
- [Access Brother Utilities \(Windows\)](#)
- [Access Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
- [Input/Output Port Locations on Your Machine](#)

Before Using Your Machine

Before attempting any printing operation, confirm the following:

- Make sure you have installed the correct software and drivers for your machine.
- For USB or network cable users: Make sure the interface cable is physically secure.

Firewall (Windows)

If your computer is protected by a firewall and you are unable to network print or network scan, you may need to configure the firewall settings. If you are using the Windows Firewall and you installed the drivers using the steps in the installer, the necessary firewall settings have been already set. If you are using any other personal firewall software, see the User's Guide for your software or contact the software manufacturer.



Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)
-

Control Panel Overview

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

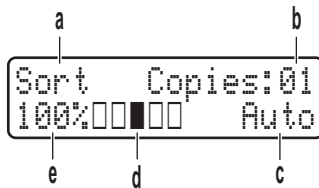
The control panel may vary depending on your model.



1. Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

Displays messages to help you set up and use the machine.

If the machine is in Ready Mode or Copy Mode, the LCD displays:



- a. Type of copy
- b. Number of copies
- c. Quality
- d. Contrast
- e. Copy ratio

2. Menu Buttons

功能

Press to access the menu for programming your machine's settings.

清除

- Press to delete entered data.
- Press to cancel the current setting.

OK

Press to store your machine's settings.

▲ or ▼

Press to scroll up or down through menus and options.

3. Function Buttons

复印/扫描 选项

Press to access temporary settings for scanning or copying.

WiFi 设置 (for wireless models)

Press and hold the **WiFi 设置** button and launch the wireless installer on your computer. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up a wireless connection between your machine and your network.

When the **WiFi 设置** light is on, your machine is connected to a wireless access point. When the **WiFi 设置** light blinks, the wireless connection is down, or your machine is in the process of connecting to a wireless access point.

扫描

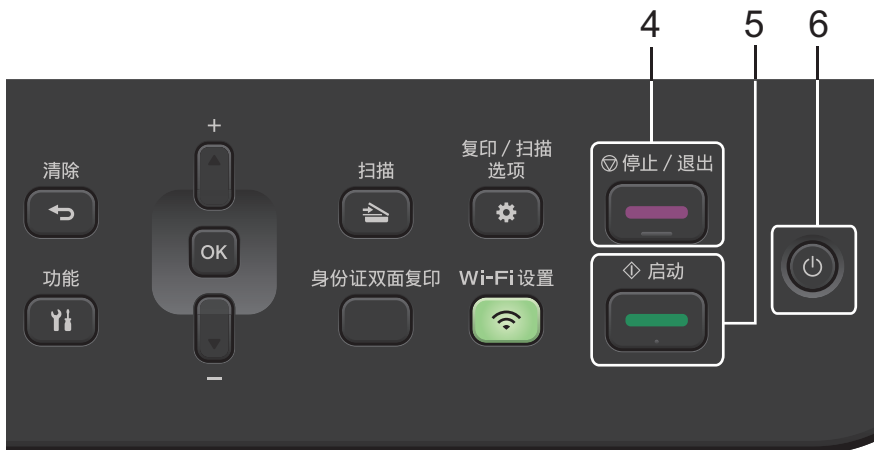
Press to switch the machine to Scan Mode.

身份证双面复印

Press to copy both sides of an identification card onto a single page.

票据 (DCP-B7638DN)

Press to copy an identification card or bills.



4. 停止/退出

- Press to stop an operation.
- Press to exit from a menu.

5. 启动

- Press to start copying.
- Press to start scanning documents.

6. On/Off

- Turn the machine on by pressing .
- Turn the machine off by pressing and holding . The LCD displays [Shutting Down] and stays on for a few seconds before turning off.



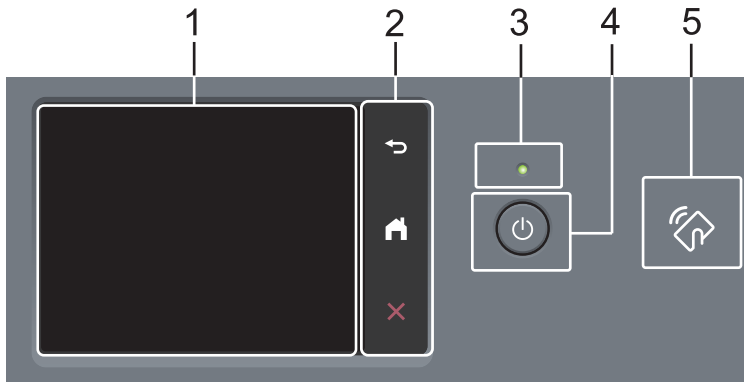
Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Control Panel Overview

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

The control panel may vary depending on your model.



1. Touchscreen Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

Access menus and options by pressing them on the touchscreen.

2. Touchpanel



(Back)

Press to go back to the previous menu.



(Home)

Press to return to the Home screen.



(Cancel)

Press to cancel an operation.

3. LED Power Indicator

The LED lights up depending on the machine's power status.

4. Power On/Off

- Turn the machine on by pressing .
- Turn the machine off by pressing and holding down . The touchscreen LCD displays [Shutting Down] and stays on for a few seconds before turning off.

5. Near Field Communication (NFC) (DCP-B7658DW)

Use card authentication, if applicable, by touching your Integrated Circuit Card (IC Card) to the NFC symbol on the machine.

Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

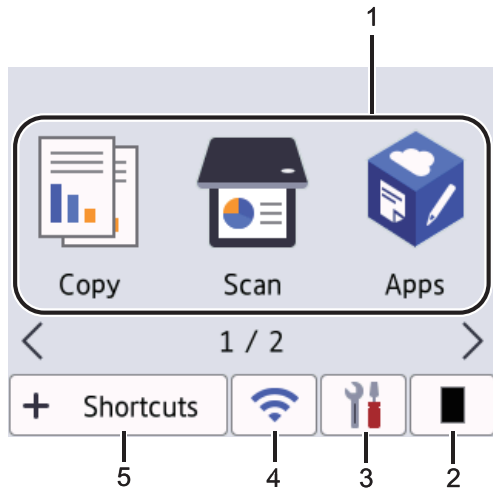
Touchscreen LCD Overview

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW






When a Home screen is displayed, press ◀ or ▶ to display the other Home screens.

The Home screen displays the machine's status when the machine is idle. When displayed, this screen indicates that your machine is ready for the next command.

The available features will vary depending on your model.



1. Modes


-  [Copy]
Press to access Copy mode.
-  [Scan]
Press to access Scan mode.
-  [Apps]
Press to connect the Brother machine to the Brother Apps service.
-  [2 in 1 ID Copy]
Press to access 2in1(ID) Copy option.
-  [Billings Copy]
Press to access the Billings ID Copy option.

2. Toner

Displays the remaining toner life. Press to access the Toner menu.

3. [Settings]

Press to access the Settings menu.

If Setting Lock has been turned on, a lock  icon appears on the LCD. You must unlock the machine to use Settings.

4.

(Wireless Status for wireless models)

Press to configure wireless settings.

If you are using a wireless connection, a four-level indicator in each of the Home screens displays the current wireless signal strength.



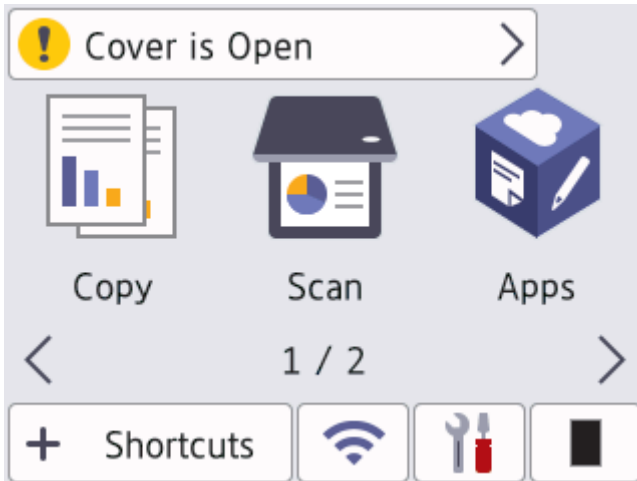
5. **+ Shortcuts** [**Shortcuts**]



Press to create Shortcuts for frequently used operations, such as making a copy, and scanning.



Three Shortcuts tabs are available with six Shortcuts on each Shortcuts tab. A total of 18 Shortcuts are available.

Warning icon



The warning icon  appears when there is an error or maintenance message; press the message area to view it, and then press  to return to Ready Mode.

NOTE

This product adopts the font of ARPHIC TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD.



Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Press your finger on the LCD to operate it. To display and access all the options, press ◀▶ or ▲▼ on the LCD to scroll through them.

The following steps explain how to navigate through changing a machine setting. In this example, the LCD Backlight setting is changed from [Light] to [Med].

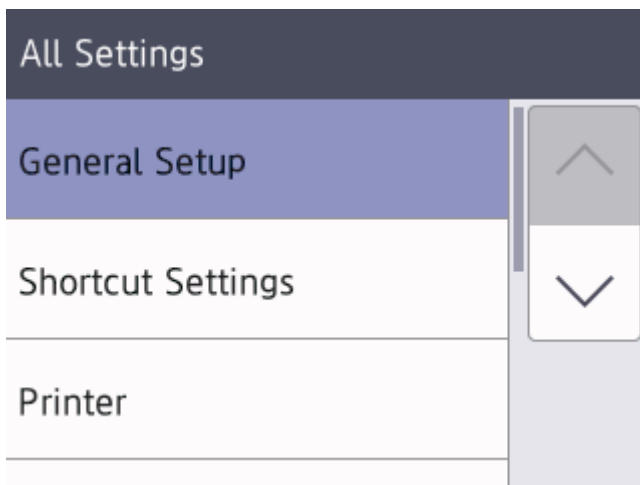
IMPORTANT

DO NOT press the LCD with a sharp object such as a pen or stylus. It may damage the machine.

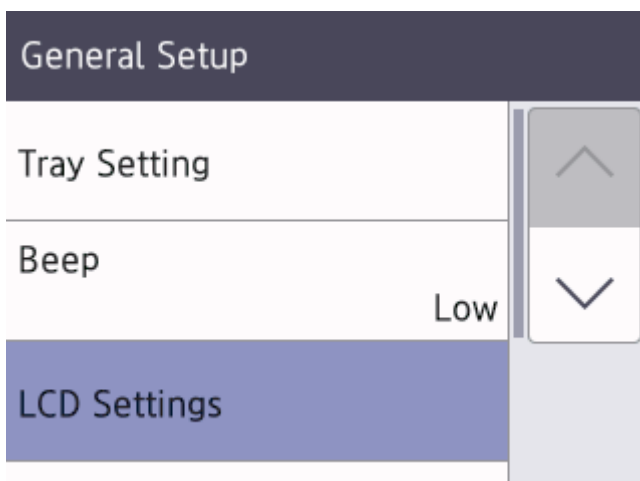
NOTE

DO NOT touch the LCD immediately after plugging in the power cord or turning on the machine. Doing this may cause an error.

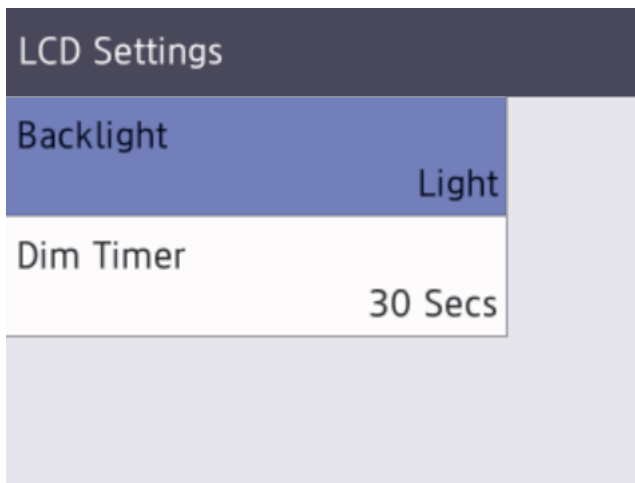
1. Press  ([Settings]).
2. Press [All Settings].
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press [General Setup].



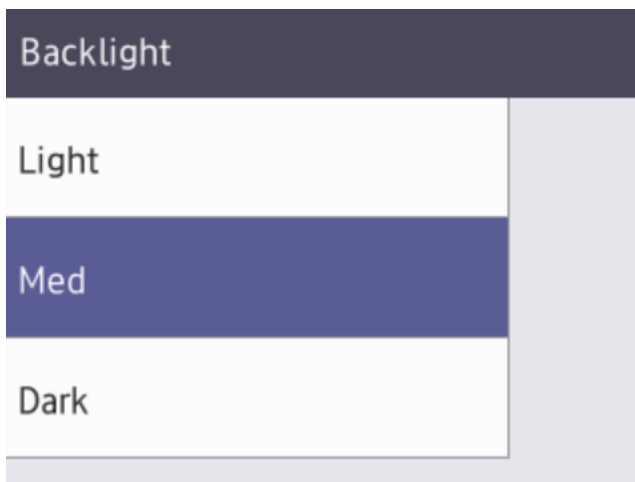
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [LCD Settings] option, and then press [LCD Settings].



5. Press [Backlight].



6. Press [Med].



7. Press .


Related Information



- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Set the Main Home Screen

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

You can change the LCD to display a specific Home screen or Shortcut screen.

When the machine is idle or you press , the touchscreen will return to the screen you set.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Screen Settings] > [Home Screen].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the screen settings, and then press the setting you want.
3. Press .

The LCD displays the screen you selected. You can change this main screen as needed.




Related Information

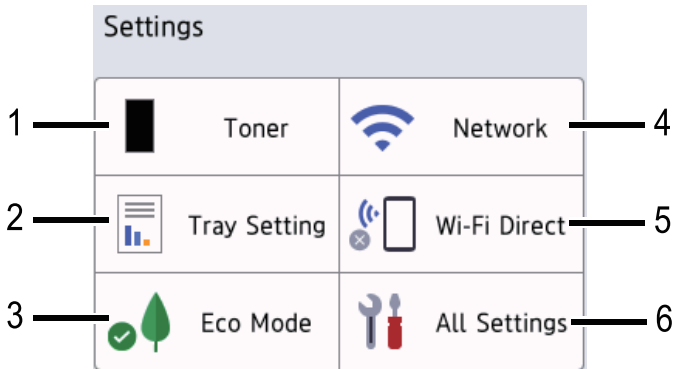
- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Settings Screen Overview

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Press  to view the current machine status on the LCD.

Use the Settings menu to access all of your machine's settings.



1. Toner

- Displays the remaining toner life.
- Press to access the [Toner] menu.

2. Tray Setting

Press to change the paper size and paper type settings.

3. Eco Mode

Press to access the [Eco Mode] menu.

4. Network

- Press to set up a network connection.
- A four-level indicator on the screen displays the current wireless signal strength if you are using a wireless connection.

5. Wi-Fi Direct

Press to set up a Wi-Fi Direct® network connection.

6. All Settings

Press to access the menu of all machine settings.



Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

How to Enter Text on Your Machine

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

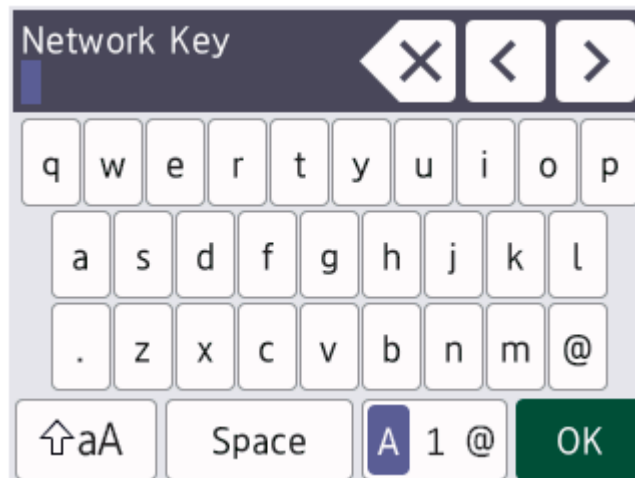
DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

When text is required, enter characters on the machine. The characters that are available may differ depending on the operation you perform.

- Hold down or repeatedly press ▲ or ▼ to select a character from this list:
0123456789abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ(space)!"#\$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?
@[^_`{|}~
- Press **OK** when the character or symbol you want is displayed, and then enter the next character.
- Press 清除 to delete characters entered incorrectly.

DCP-B7658DW

- When you must enter text on your machine, a keyboard appears on the LCD.
- The characters that are available may differ depending on your country.
- The keyboard layout may differ depending on the operation you perform.



- Press to cycle between letters, numbers, and special characters.
- Press to cycle between lowercase and uppercase letters.
- To move the cursor to the left or right, press ◀ or ▶.

Inserting spaces

- To enter a space, press [Space].

Making corrections

- If you entered a character incorrectly and want to change it, press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor to the incorrect character and press . Enter the correct character.
- To insert a character, press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor to the correct place, and then enter the character.
- Press for each character you want to erase, or press and hold to erase all the characters.



Related Information



- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

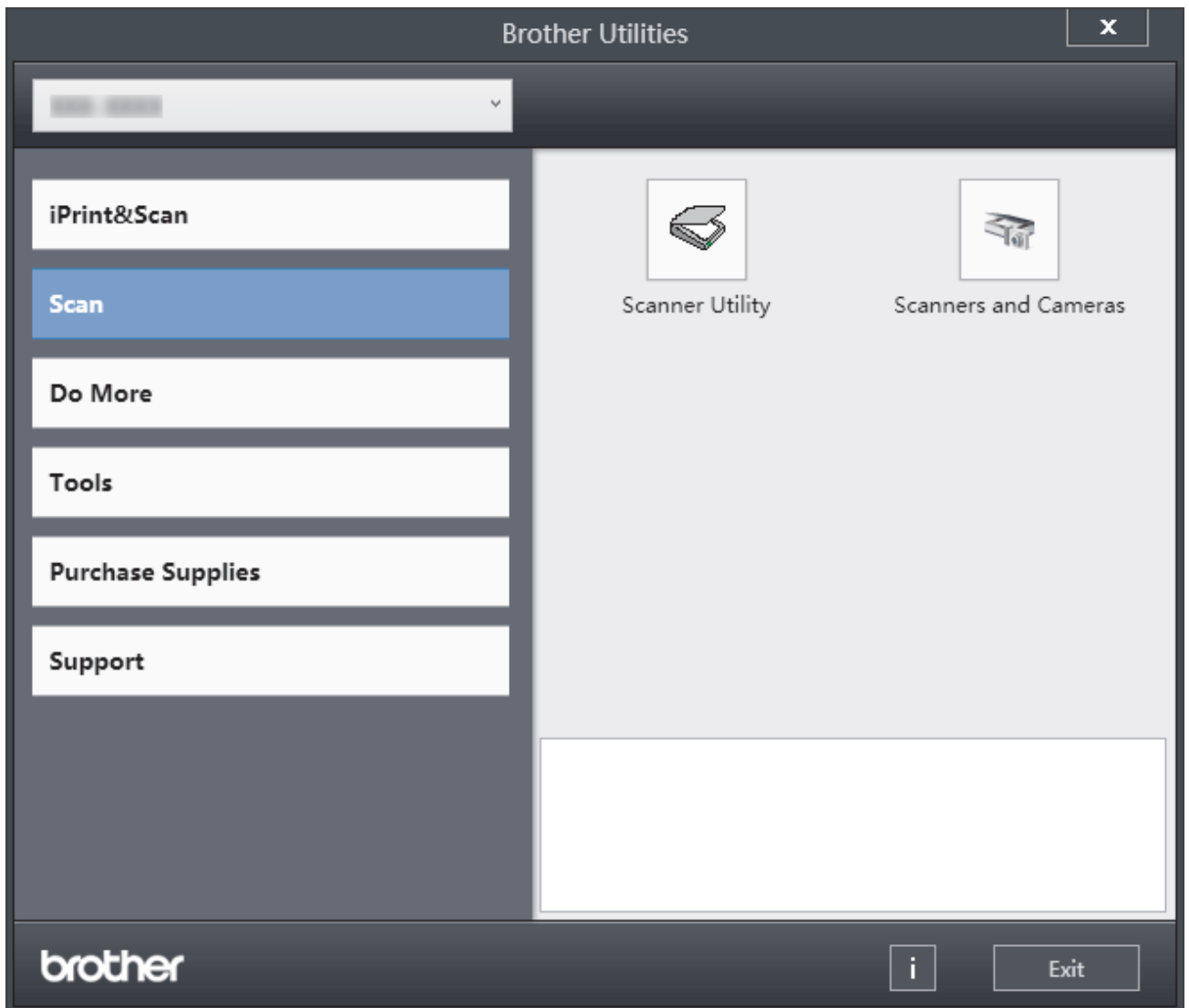
Related Topics:

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
 - [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
-

Access Brother Utilities (Windows)

Brother Utilities is an application launcher that offers convenient access to all Brother applications installed on your computer.

1. Do one of the following:
 - (Windows 11)
Click  > **All apps** > **Brother** > **Brother Utilities**.
 - (Windows 10)
Click  > **Brother** > **Brother Utilities**.
2. Select your machine.





3. Choose the option you want.

✓ Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)
 - [Uninstall the Software and Drivers \(Windows\)](#)

Uninstall the Software and Drivers (Windows)

1. Do one of the following:
 - Windows 11
Click  > **All apps** > **Brother** > **Brother Utilities**.
 - Windows 10
Click  > **Brother** > **Brother Utilities**.
2. Select your model from the drop-down list (if it is not already selected).
3. Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar.
 - If the **Software Update Notification** icon is visible, select it, and then click **Check now** > **Check for Software Updates** > **Update**. Follow the on-screen instructions.
 - If the **Software Update Notification** icon is not visible, go to the next step.
4. Click **Uninstall** in the **Tools** section of **Brother Utilities**.
Follow the instructions in the dialog box to uninstall the software and drivers.



Related Information

- [Access Brother Utilities \(Windows\)](#)

Access Brother iPrint&Scan (Windows/Mac)

Use Brother iPrint&Scan for Windows and Mac to print and scan from your computer.

To download the latest version:

- For Windows:

Go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads, and then download and install Brother iPrint&Scan.

- For Mac:

Download and install Brother iPrint&Scan from the Apple App Store.


If prompted, install the driver and software necessary to use your machine. Download your machine's latest driver and software from your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.

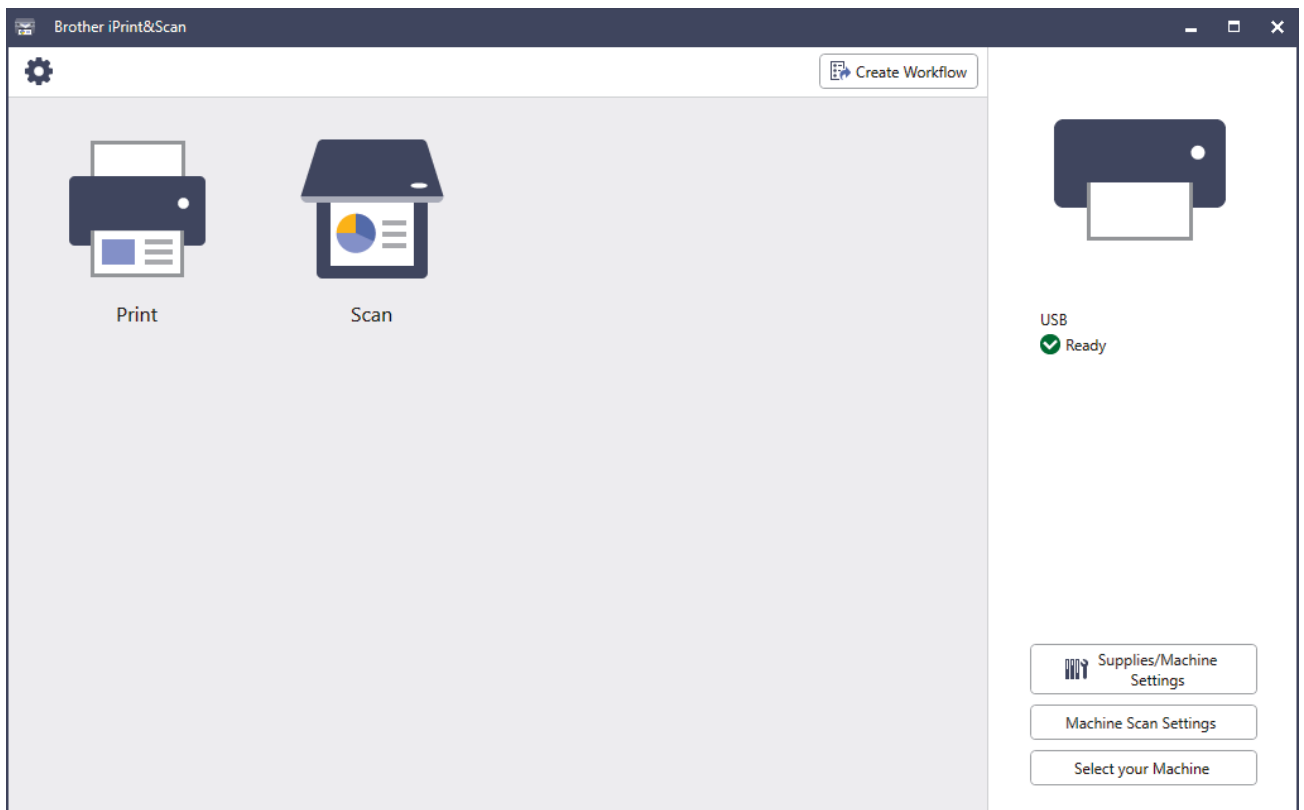
1. Do one of the following:

- Windows 11

Click  > **All apps** > **Brother** > **Brother iPrint&Scan**.

- Windows 10

Click  > **Brother** > **Brother iPrint&Scan**.



The actual screen may differ depending on the version of the application.

✓ Related Information

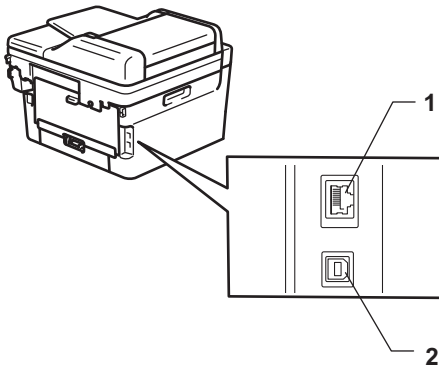
- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Brother Mobile Connect](#)
- [Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
- [Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan](#)

Input/Output Port Locations on Your Machine

The input/output ports are located on the front and back of the machine.



1. 10BASE-T / 100BASE-TX port (For network models)
2. USB port

When connecting the USB or network cable, follow the instructions in the software/driver installer.

To install driver and software necessary for operating your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.



Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Paper Handling

- [Load Paper](#)
- [Paper Settings](#)
- [Recommended Print Media](#)
- [Load Documents](#)
- [Unscannable and Unprintable Areas](#)
- [Using Special Paper](#)

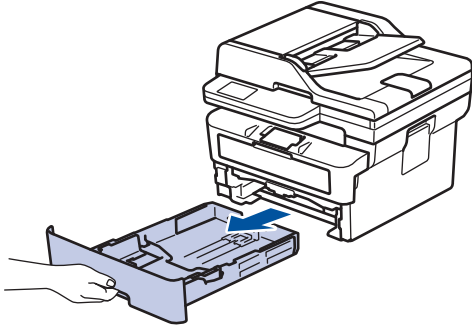
Load Paper

- [Load Paper in the Paper Tray](#)
- [Load and Print Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper and Bond Paper in the Manual Feed Slot](#)
- [Load and Print on Thick Paper and Labels Using the Manual Feed Slot](#)
- [Load and Print on Envelopes in the Manual Feed Slot](#)

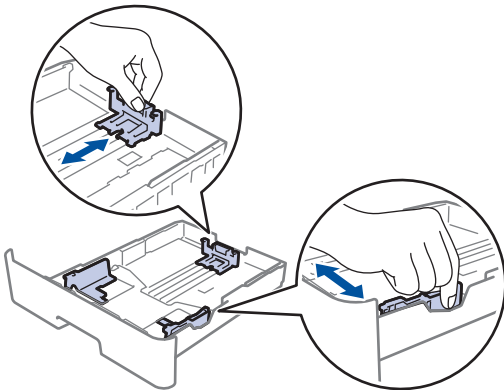
Load Paper in the Paper Tray

- If, when the Check Paper setting is set to On and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper size and paper type, change these settings, if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must also change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings on the machine, or on your computer.

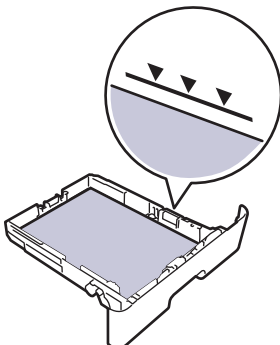
1. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



2. Press and slide the paper guides to fit the paper.
Press the green release levers to slide the paper guides.

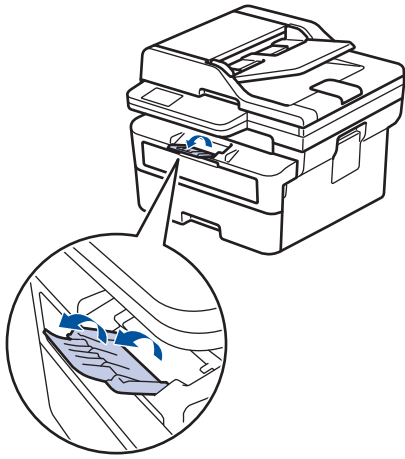


3. Fan the stack of paper well.
4. Load paper in the paper tray with the printing surface *face down*.
5. Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (▼▼▼).
Overfilling the paper tray will cause paper jams.



6. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.

7. Lift the support flap to prevent paper from sliding off the output tray.



 **Related Information**

- [Load Paper](#)
 - [Change Machine Settings to Print on Preprinted Paper Using the Paper Tray](#)
-

Change Machine Settings to Print on Preprinted Paper Using the Paper Tray

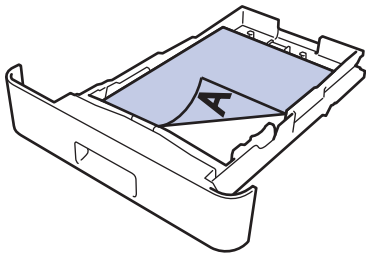
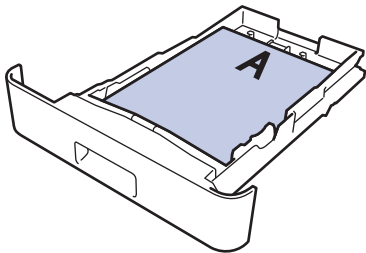
Related Models: DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

When you use preprinted paper for 2-sided printing, change the machine's settings.



- DO NOT load different sizes and types of paper in the paper tray at the same time. Doing this may cause the paper to jam or misfeed.
- If the print position is misaligned with the preprinted objects, the print position is adjustable using the Print Position setting for the paper tray.
- Some preprinted paper may cause print stains, depending on the printing method and ink type.

Orientation



	For 1-sided printing <ul style="list-style-type: none">• face down• top edge towards the front of the paper tray
	For automatic 2-sided printing (long edge binding) <ul style="list-style-type: none">• face up• bottom edge towards the front of the paper tray

>> [DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the following:
 - a. Select [Printer]. Press **OK**.
 - b. Select [2-sided]. Press **OK**.
 - c. Select [Single Image]. Press **OK**.
 - d. Select [2-sided Feed]. Press **OK**.
3. Press 停止/退出.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Printer] > [2-sided] > [Single Image] > [2-sided Feed].
2. Press .



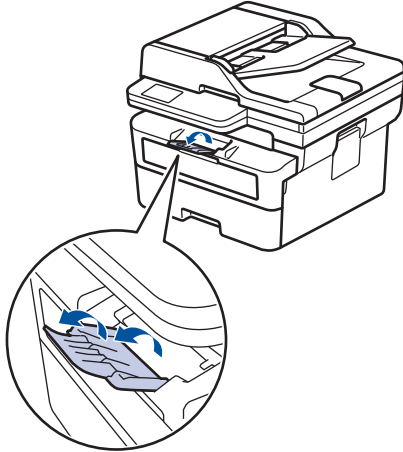
Related Information

- [Load Paper in the Paper Tray](#)

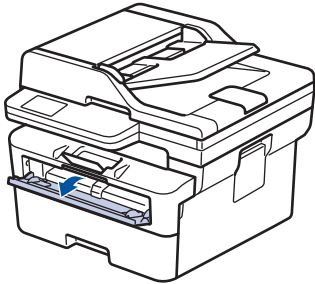
Load and Print Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper and Bond Paper in the Manual Feed Slot

When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or on your computer at the same time.

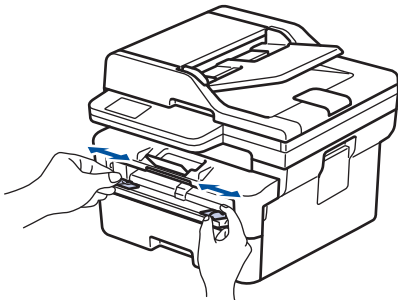
1. Lift the support flap to prevent paper from sliding off the face down output tray.



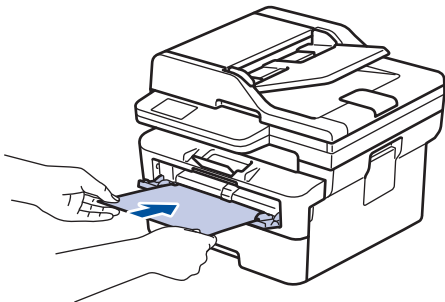
2. Open the manual feed slot cover.



3. Use both hands to slide the manual feed slot paper guides to fit the width of the paper you are using.

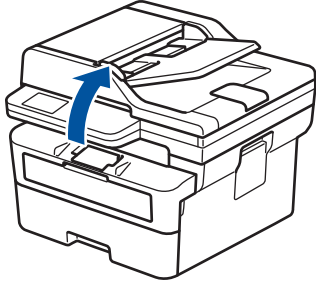


4. Using both hands, place one sheet of paper in the manual feed slot until the front edge touches the paper feed roller. When you feel the machine pull it in, let go.

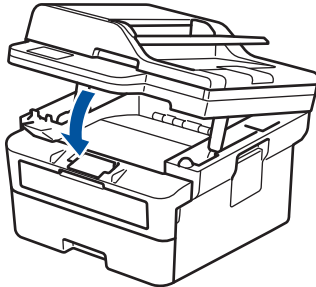




- Load paper into the manual feed slot with the printing surface *facing up*.
- Make sure the paper is straight and in the correct position in the manual feed slot. If it is not, the paper may not be fed correctly, resulting in a skewed printout or a paper jam.
- To remove a small printout from the output tray, use both hands to lift up the scanner cover.



- You can still use the machine while the scanner cover is up. To close the scanner cover, gently push it down with both hands.



5. Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print screen.

6. After the printed page comes out from the machine, load the next sheet of paper in the manual feed slot. Repeat for each page that you want to print.



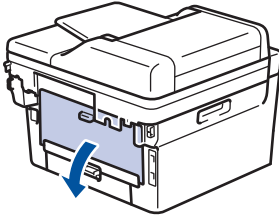
Related Information


- [Load Paper](#)

Load and Print on Thick Paper and Labels Using the Manual Feed Slot

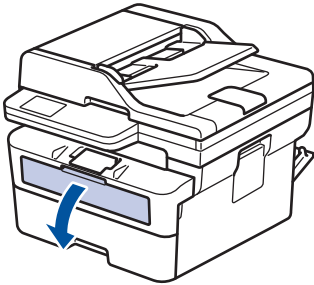
When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or on your computer at the same time.

1. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).

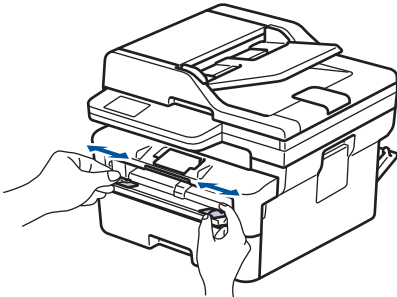


 The machine automatically turns on Manual Feed mode when you load paper in the manual feed slot.

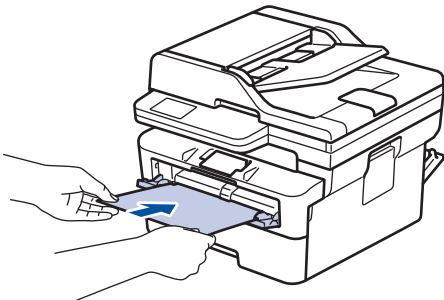
2. On the front of the machine, open the manual feed slot cover.




3. Use both hands to slide the manual feed slot paper guides to fit the width of the paper that you are using.



4. Using both hands, place one sheet of paper in the manual feed slot until the front edge touches the paper feed roller. When you feel the machine pull it in, let go.



- 
- Load paper into the manual feed slot with the printing surface *facing up*.
 - Pull the paper out completely if you must reload the paper into the manual feed slot.
 - Do not put more than one sheet of paper in the manual feed slot at one time, as it may cause a jam.
 - Make sure the paper is straight and in the correct position in the manual feed slot. If it is not, the paper may not be fed correctly, resulting in a skewed printout or a paper jam.

5. Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print screen.

6. After the printed page comes out from the back of the machine, load the next sheet of paper in the manual feed slot. Repeat for each page that you want to print.
7. When finished, close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



Related Information

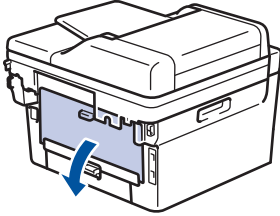
- [Load Paper](#)
-


Load and Print on Envelopes in the Manual Feed Slot

Before loading, press the corners and sides of the envelopes to make them as flat as possible.

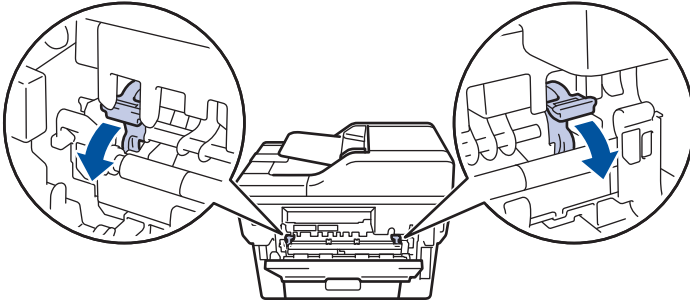
When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or on your computer at the same time.

1. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).

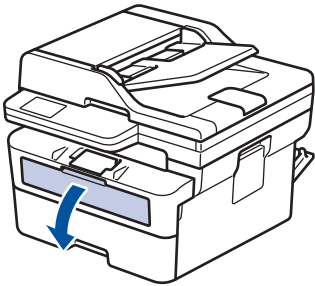


 The machine automatically turns on Manual Feed mode when you load paper in the manual feed slot.

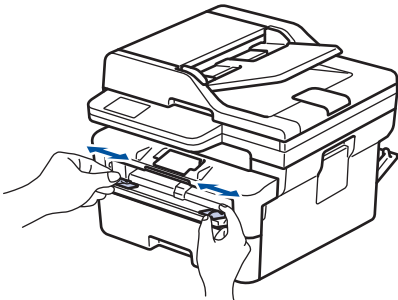
2. Pull down the two green levers, one on the left side and one on the right side, as shown in the illustration.



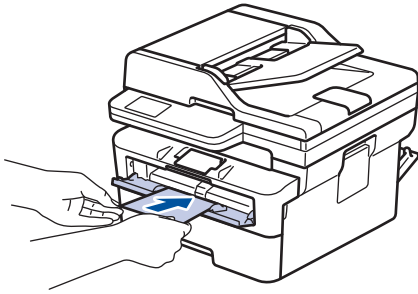
3. On the front of the machine, open the manual feed slot cover.



4. Use both hands to slide the manual feed slot paper guides to fit the width of the paper that you are using.



-
5. Using both hands, put one envelope in the manual feed slot until the front edge touches the paper feed roller. When you feel the machine pull it in, let go.



-
- Load the envelope into the manual feed slot with the printing surface *facing up*.
 - Pull the envelope out completely when you reload the envelope into the manual feed slot.
 - Do not put more than one envelope in the manual feed slot at one time, as it may cause a jam.
 - Make sure the envelope is straight and in the correct position on the manual feed slot. If it is not, the envelope may not be fed correctly, resulting in a skewed printout or a paper jam.
-

6. Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print dialog box.

Settings	Options for Envelopes
Paper Size	Com-10 DL C5 Monarch
Media Type	Envelopes Env. Thick Env. Thin

7. After the printed envelope comes out of the machine, put in the next envelope. Repeat for each envelope that you want to print.
8. When you have finished printing, return the two green levers you adjusted in the earlier step back to their original positions.
9. When finished, close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



Related Information

- [Load Paper](#)
 - [Print](#)
-

Paper Settings

- [Change the Paper Size and Paper Type](#)
- [Change the Check Paper Setting](#)

Change the Paper Size and Paper Type


When you change the size and type of paper you load in the tray, you must also change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings on the LCD.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW


1. Press **功能**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Tray Setting] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Paper Type] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Thin Paper], [Plain Paper], [Thick Paper], or [Recycled Paper] option, and then press **OK**.
6. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Paper Size] option, and then press **OK**.
7. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the option you want, and then press **OK**.
8. Press **停止/退出**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting] > [Paper Type].
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the paper type options, and press the option you want.



The paper type may vary depending on your model.

3. Press [Paper Size].
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the paper size options, and press the option you want.
5. Press .

✓ Related Information

- [Paper Settings](#)

Change the Check Paper Setting

When the Check Paper setting is set to On and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper size and paper type.



The default setting is On.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press **功能**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Tray Setting] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Check Paper] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [On] or [Off] option, and then press **OK**.
6. Press **停止/退出**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting] > [Check Paper].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .

✓ Related Information

- [Paper Settings](#)

Recommended Print Media

To get the best print quality, we recommend using the paper listed in the table.

Paper Type	Item
Plain Paper	APP Blue Flag Ship 70 g/m ² APP Gold Flag Ship 80 g/m ² Advanced Agro Double A 80 g/m ²



Related Information

- [Paper Handling](#)

Load Documents

- [Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder \(ADF\)](#)
- [Load Documents on the Scanner Glass](#)

Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

Related Models: DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

Use the ADF when copying or scanning multi page, standard-sized documents.

- The ADF can hold the following sheets and feed each sheet individually:
Up to 50 sheets
- Use standard 80 g/m² paper.
- Make sure documents with correction fluid or written in ink are completely dry.

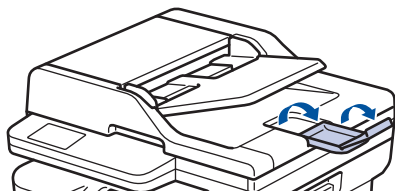
IMPORTANT

- DO NOT leave thick documents on the scanner glass. If you do this, the ADF may jam.
- DO NOT use paper that is curled, wrinkled, folded, ripped, stapled, paper-clipped, glued together, or taped.
- DO NOT use cardboard, newspaper, or fabric.
- To avoid damaging your machine while using the ADF, DO NOT pull on the document while it is feeding.

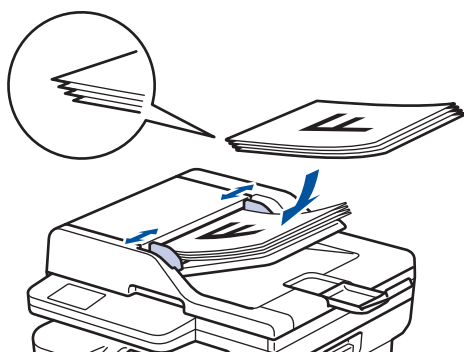
Supported Document Sizes

Length:	147.3 to 355.6 mm
Width:	105 to 215.9 mm
Weight:	60 to 105 g/m ²

1. Unfold the ADF document output support flap.



2. Fan the pages well.
3. Stagger the pages of your document and load it into the ADF *face up* and *top edge first*, as shown in the illustration.



4. Adjust the paper guides to fit the width of your document.

✓ Related Information

- [Load Documents](#)

Load Documents on the Scanner Glass

Use the scanner glass to copy or scan one page at a time.

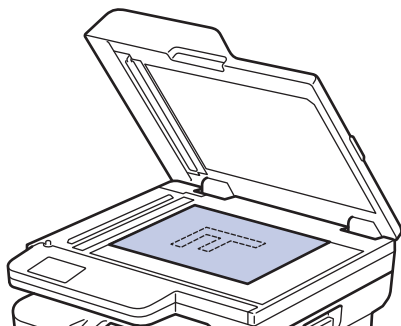
Supported Document Sizes

Length:	Up to 300 mm
Width:	Up to 215.9 mm
Weight:	Up to 2kg

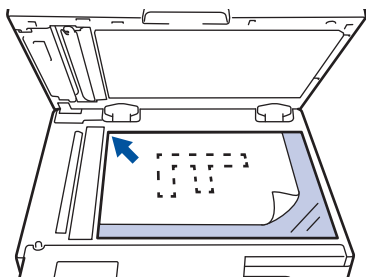
NOTE

(For ADF models) To use the scanner glass, the ADF must be empty.

1. Lift the document cover.
2. Place the document on the scanner glass *face down*.



3. Place the corner of the page in the upper left corner of the scanner glass.



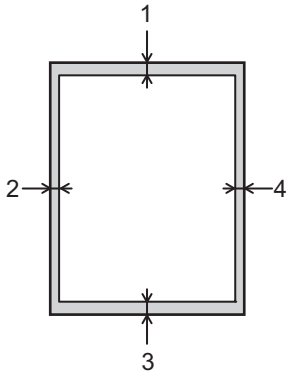
4. Close the document cover.
If the document is a book or is thick, gently press on the document cover.

✓ Related Information

- [Load Documents](#)

Unscannable and Unprintable Areas

The measurements in the table below show maximum unscannable and unprintable areas from the edges of the most commonly-used paper sizes. These measurements may vary depending on the paper size or settings in the application you are using.



Do not attempt to scan, copy, or print in these areas. Any content included in such areas will not be reflected in the output.

Usage	Document Size	Top (1) Bottom (3)	Left (2) Right (4)
Copy ¹	Letter, Legal	4.0 mm	4.0 mm
	A4	4.0 mm	3.0 mm
Scan	Letter	3.0 mm	3.0 mm
	A4	3.0 mm	3.0 mm
	Legal	3.0 mm	3.0 mm
Print	Letter, Legal	4.2 mm	4.2 mm
	A4	4.2 mm	4.2 mm

¹ A 1 in 1 copy and 100% document size copy

✓ Related Information

- [Paper Handling](#)

Using Special Paper

Always test paper samples before purchasing them to ensure desirable performance.

- DO NOT use inkjet paper; it may cause a paper jam or damage your machine.
- If you use bond paper, paper with a rough surface, or paper that is wrinkled or creased, the paper may exhibit degraded performance.

Store paper in its original packaging and keep it sealed. Keep the paper flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight, and heat.

IMPORTANT

Some types of paper may not perform well or may cause damage to your machine.

DO NOT use paper:

- that is highly textured
- that is extremely smooth or shiny
- that is curled or warped
- that is coated or has a chemical finish
- that is damaged, creased, or folded
- that exceeds the recommended weight specification in this guide
- with tabs and staples
- that is multipart or carbonless
- that is designed for inkjet printing

If you use any of the types of paper listed above, they may damage your machine. This damage is not covered under any Brother warranty or service agreement.



Related Information

- [Paper Handling](#)

Print

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
- [Load and Print on Envelopes in the Manual Feed Slot](#)
- [Change Print Settings Using the Control Panel](#)
- [Cancel a Print Job](#)
- [Test Print](#)

Print from Your Computer (Windows)

- [Print a Document \(Windows\)](#)
- [Print on Both Sides of the Paper \(Windows\)](#)
- [Change the Default Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)
- [Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)
- [Print a Document Using the BR-Script3 Printer Driver \(PostScript® 3™ Language Emulation\) \(Windows\)](#)
- [Monitor the Status of the Machine from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Print a Document (Windows)

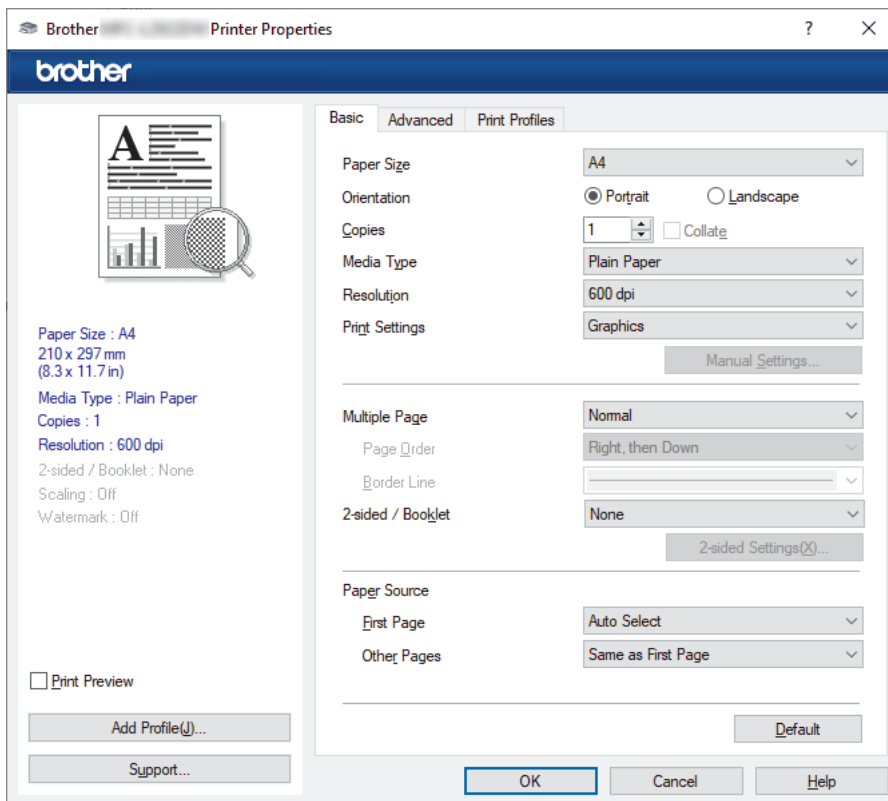
When you change an application's print settings, the changes apply only to documents printed with that application.



To change print settings for all Windows applications, you must configure the printer driver properties. For more information, see *Related Information: Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)*.

1. [Load paper in the paper tray.](#)
2. Select the print command in your application.
3. Select your model's name, and then click the printer's properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.



4. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
5. Click the **Paper Size** drop-down list, and then select your paper size.
6. In the **Orientation** field, select the **Portrait** or **Landscape** option to set the orientation of your printout.



If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

7. Type the number of copies (1-999) you want in the **Copies** field.
8. Click the **Media Type** drop-down list, and then select the type of paper you are using.
9. To print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper or print one page of your document on multiple sheets, click the **Multiple Page** drop-down list, and then select your options.
10. Click the **2-sided / Booklet** drop-down list, and then select the option you want.
11. Change other printer settings, if needed.
12. Click **OK**.
13. Complete your print operation.



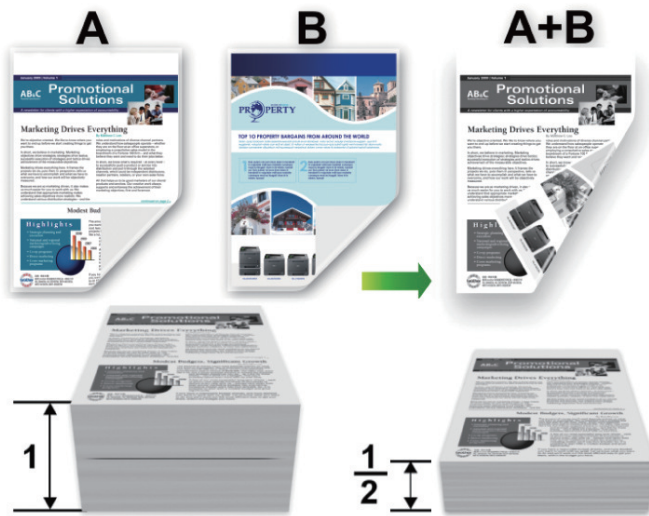
Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)
- [Change the Default Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)
- [Paper Settings](#)
- [Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)

Print on Both Sides of the Paper (Windows)



Select A4 sized paper when using the automatic 2-sided printing function.

- Make sure the back cover is closed.
- If paper is curled, straighten it and put it back in the paper tray.
- Use regular paper or thin paper. DO NOT use bond paper.
- If the paper is too thin, it may wrinkle.
- When you use the manual 2-sided printing function, it is possible there may be paper jams or poor print quality.

1. Select the print command in your application.
2. Select your model's name, and then click the printer's properties or preferences button.
The printer driver window appears.
3. In the **Orientation** field, select the **Portrait** or **Landscape** option to set the orientation of your printout.



If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

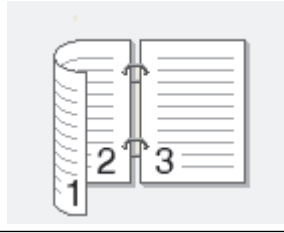
4. Click the **2-sided / Booklet** drop-down list, and then select the **2-sided** or **2-sided (Manual)** option.

Option	Description
2-sided	Automatically prints on both sides of the paper.
2-sided (Manual)	The machine prints all the even-numbered pages on one side of the paper first. Then, the printer driver instructs you (with a pop-up message) to reinsert the paper.

5. Click the **2-sided Settings** button.
6. Select one of the options from the **2-sided Type** menu.
When 2-sided is selected, four types of 2-sided binding are available for each orientation:

Option for Portrait	Description
---------------------	-------------

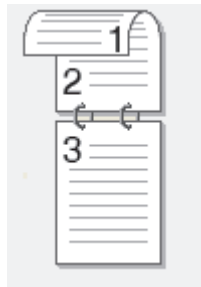
Long Edge (Left)



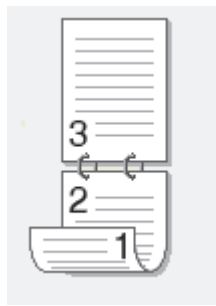
Long Edge (Right)



Short Edge (Top)

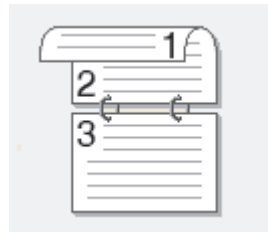


Short Edge (Bottom)

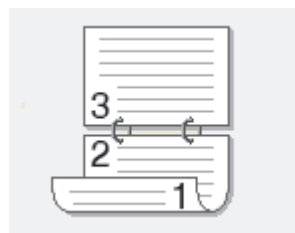


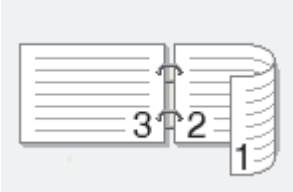
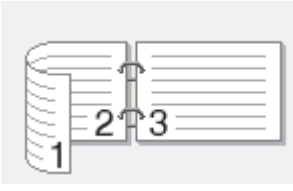
Option for Landscape	Description
----------------------	-------------

Long Edge (Top)



Long Edge (Bottom)



Option for Landscape	Description
Short Edge (Right)	
Short Edge (Left)	

7. Select the **Binding Offset** checkbox to specify the offset for binding in inches or millimetres.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Change other printer settings, if needed.
10. Do one of the following:
 - For automatic 2-sided printing, click **OK** again, and then complete your print operation.
 - For manual 2-sided printing, click **OK** again and follow the on-screen instructions.

If the paper is not feeding correctly, it may be curled. Remove the paper, straighten it, and put it back in the paper tray.





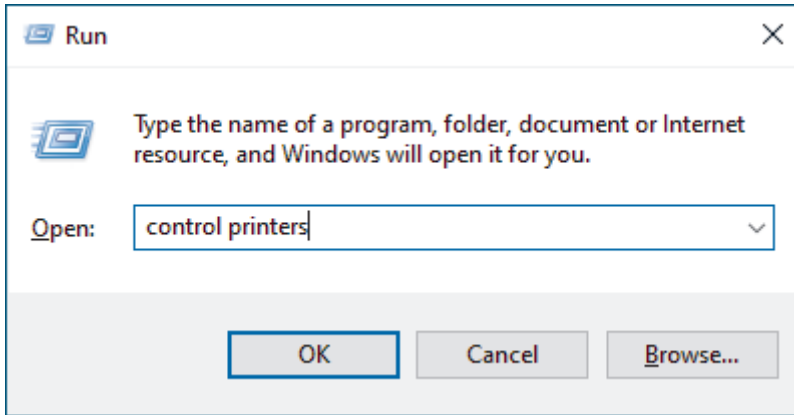
Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)

When you change an application's print settings, the changes apply only to documents printed with that application. To change print settings for all Windows applications, you must configure the printer driver properties.

1. Hold down the  key and press the  key on the computer's keyboard to launch **Run**.
2. Type "**control printers**" in the **Open:** field and click **OK**.



The **Devices and Printers** window appears.



If the **Devices and Printers** window does not appear, click **View more devices > More devices and printer settings**.

3. Right-click your model's icon, and then select **Printer properties**. (If the printer driver options appear, select your printer driver.)
The printer properties dialog box appears.
4. Click the **General** tab, and then click the **Printing Preferences...** or **Preferences...** button.
The printer driver dialog box appears.



- To configure the tray settings, click the **Device Settings** tab (available for certain models).
- To change the printer port, click the **Ports** tab.

5. Select the print settings you want to use as the default for all of your Windows programs.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Close the printer properties dialog box.



Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)
- [Print a Document \(Windows\)](#)
- [Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)

Print Settings (Windows)

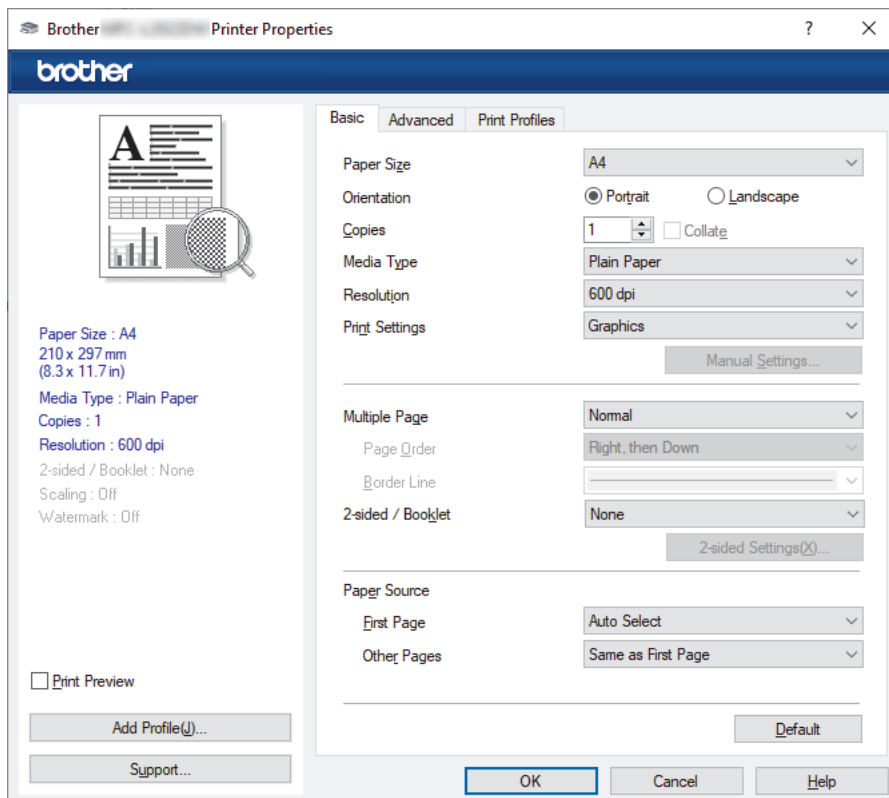


- When you change an application's print settings, the changes apply only to documents printed with that application.
For more information, see *Related Information: Print a Document (Windows)*.
- To change the default print settings, you must configure the printer driver properties.
For more information, see *Related Information: Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)*.

>> **Basic Tab**

>> **Advanced Tab**

Basic Tab



1. Paper Size

Select the paper size you want to use. You can either choose from standard paper sizes or create a custom paper size.

2. Orientation

Select the orientation (portrait or landscape) of your printout.

If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

3. Copies

Type the number of copies (1-999) that you want to print in this field.

Collate

Select this option to print sets of multi-page documents in the original page order. When this option is selected, one complete copy of your document will print, and then reprint according to the number of copies you choose. If this option is not selected, then each page will print according to the number of copies chosen before the next page of the document is printed.

4. Media Type

Select the media type you want to use. To achieve the best print results, the machine automatically adjusts its print settings according to the selected media type.

5. Resolution

Select the print resolution. As print resolution and speed are related, the higher the resolution, the longer it will take to print the document.

6. Print Settings

Select the type of document you want to print.

Manual Settings...

Specify additional settings such as brightness, contrast, and other settings.

Graphics

Use Printer Halftone

Select this option to use the printer driver to express halftones.

Brightness

Adjust the brightness.

Contrast

Adjust the contrast.

Graphics Quality

Select either Graphics or Text for the best print quality, based on the type of document you are printing.

Improve Grey Printing

Select this option to improve the image quality of shaded areas.

Improve Pattern Printing

Select this option to improve the pattern printing if printed fills and patterns are different from the fills and patterns you see on your computer screen.

Improve Thin Line

Select this option to improve the image quality of thin lines.

Use System Halftone

Select this option to use Windows to express halftones.

TrueType Mode

Mode

Select how the fonts are processed for printing.

7. Multiple Page

Select this option to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper, or print one page of your document on multiple sheets.

Page Order

Select the page order when printing multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.

Border Line

Select the type of border to use when printing multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.

8. 2-sided / Booklet

Select this option to print on both sides of the paper, or print a document in booklet format using 2-sided printing.

2-sided Settings

Click this button to select the type of 2-sided binding. Four types of 2-sided bindings are available for each orientation.

9. Paper Source

Select the paper source setting according to your print conditions or purpose.

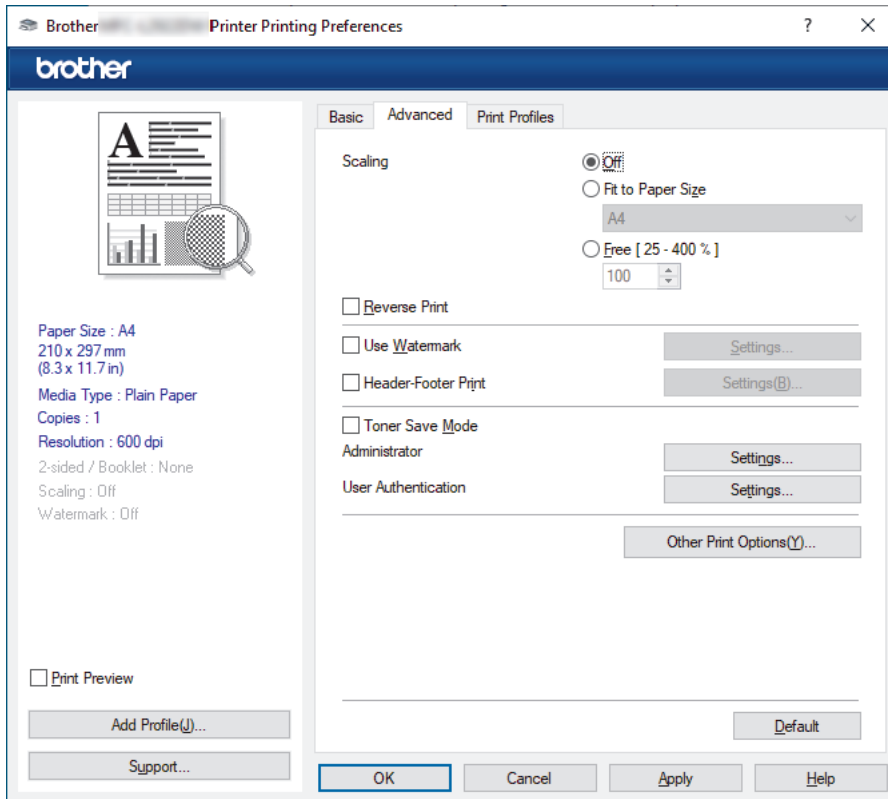
First Page

Select the paper source to use for printing the first page.

Other Pages

Select the paper source to use for printing the second and subsequent pages.

Advanced Tab



1. Scaling

Select these options to enlarge or reduce the size of the pages in your document.

Fit to Paper Size

Select this option to enlarge or reduce the document pages to fit a specified paper size. When you select this option, select the paper size you want from the drop-down list.

Free [25 - 400%]

Select this option to enlarge or reduce the document pages manually. When you select this option, type a value into the field.

2. Reverse Print

Select this option to rotate the printed image 180 degrees.

3. Use Watermark

Select this option to print a logo or text on your document as a watermark. Select one of the preset watermarks, add a new watermark, or use an image file you have created.

4. Header-Footer Print

Select this option to print the date, time, and login user name on the document.

5. Toner Save Mode

Select this feature to use less toner to print documents; printouts appear lighter, but are still legible.

6. Administrator

This feature allows you to change the administrator password and restrict various printing functions.

7. User Authentication (available for certain models)

This feature allows you to confirm the restrictions for each user.

8. Other Print Options

Sleep Time

Select this option to set the machine to enter sleep mode immediately after printing.

Macro (available for certain models)

Select this feature to print an electronic form (macro), which you have stored in your machine's memory, as an overlay on the print job.

Density Adjustment

Specify the print density.

Improve Print Output

Select this option to reduce the amount of paper curling and improve the toner fixing.

Skip Blank Page

Select this option to allow the printer driver to automatically detect blank pages and exclude them from printing.

Print Text in Black

Select this option when you want to print colour text in black.

Print Archive

Select this option to save the print data as a PDF file to your computer.

Eco settings

Select this option to reduce printing noise.



Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [Change the Default Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Print a Document \(Windows\)](#)
-

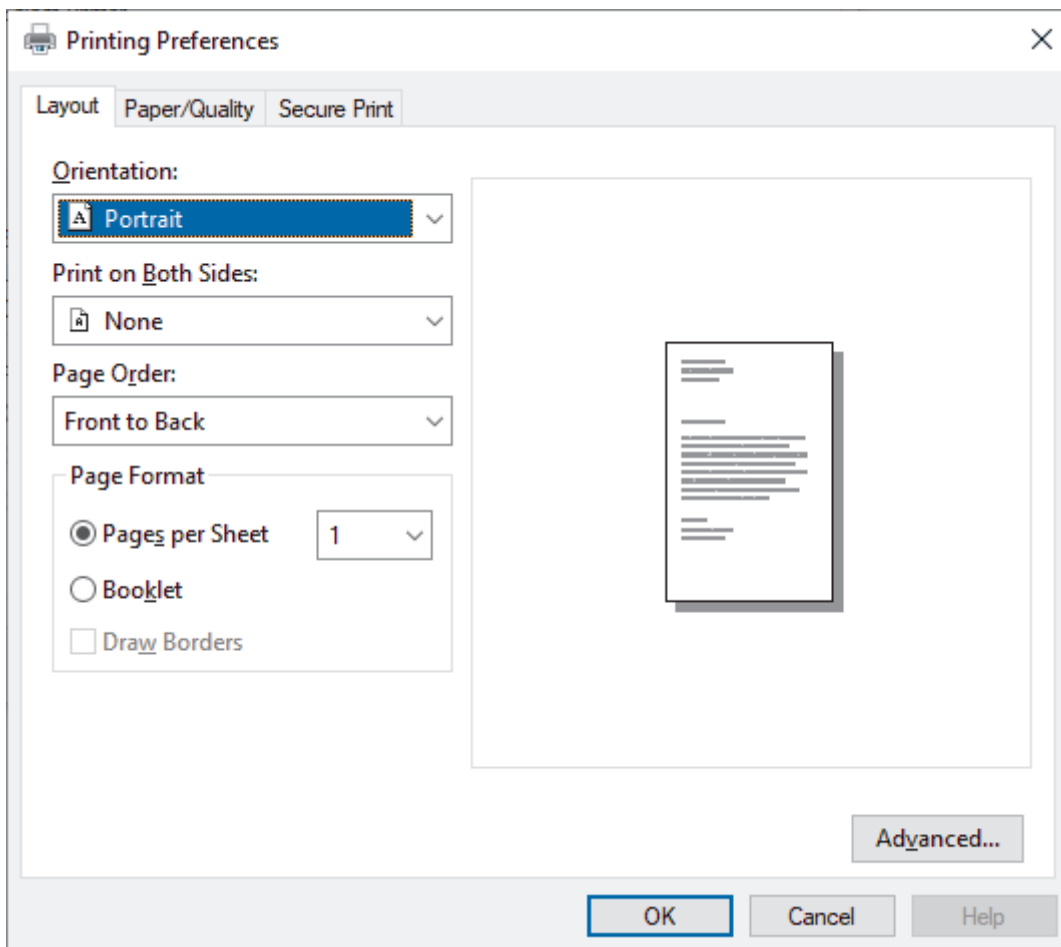
Print a Document Using the BR-Script3 Printer Driver (PostScript® 3™ Language Emulation) (Windows)

The BR-Script3 printer driver lets you print PostScript® data more clearly.

Go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads to install the PS driver (BR-Script3 printer driver).

1. Select the print command in your application.
2. Select your model with **BR-Script3** in the name, and then click the printer's properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.



3. Click the **Layout** or **Paper/Quality** tab to change basic print settings.
Click the **Layout** or **Paper/Quality** tab, and then click the **Advanced...** button to change advanced print settings. Click **OK**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Complete your print operation.



✓ Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Monitor the Status of the Machine from Your Computer (Windows)

The Status Monitor is a configurable software tool for monitoring the status of one or more machines, allowing you to get immediate notification of errors.

Do one of the following:

- Double-click the  icon in the task tray.
- Launch  (**Brother Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model's name (if not already selected). Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Status Monitor**.

Troubleshooting

Click the **Troubleshooting** button to access the support website.

Visit the Genuine Supplies website

Click the **Visit the Genuine Supplies website** button for more information on Brother genuine supplies.



Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)

Print from Your Computer (Mac)

- [Print Using AirPrint](#)

Print Using AirPrint

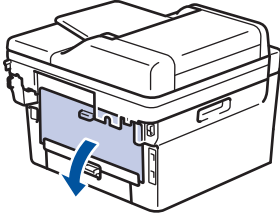
- [Print from iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch](#)
- [Print Using AirPrint \(macOS\)](#)

Load and Print on Envelopes in the Manual Feed Slot

Before loading, press the corners and sides of the envelopes to make them as flat as possible.

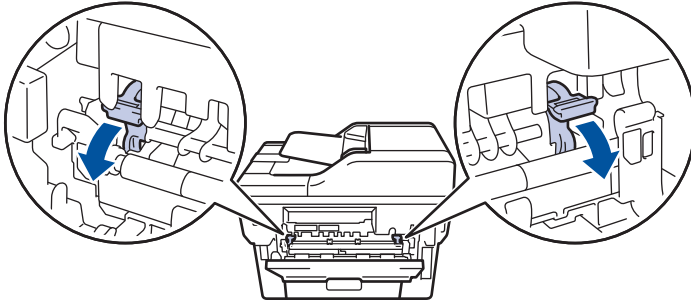
When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or on your computer at the same time.

1. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).

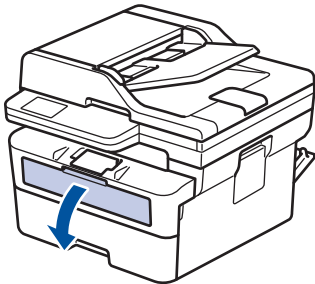


The machine automatically turns on Manual Feed mode when you load paper in the manual feed slot.

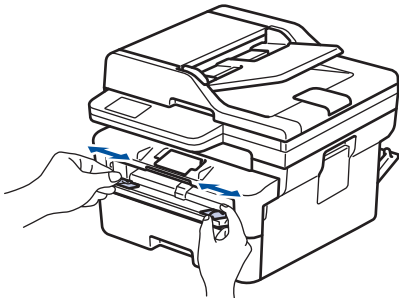
2. Pull down the two green levers, one on the left side and one on the right side, as shown in the illustration.



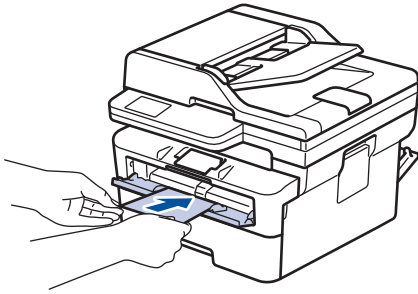
3. On the front of the machine, open the manual feed slot cover.



4. Use both hands to slide the manual feed slot paper guides to fit the width of the paper that you are using.



- Using both hands, put one envelope in the manual feed slot until the front edge touches the paper feed roller. When you feel the machine pull it in, let go.



- Load the envelope into the manual feed slot with the printing surface *facing up*.
- Pull the envelope out completely when you reload the envelope into the manual feed slot.
- Do not put more than one envelope in the manual feed slot at one time, as it may cause a jam.
- Make sure the envelope is straight and in the correct position on the manual feed slot. If it is not, the envelope may not be fed correctly, resulting in a skewed printout or a paper jam.

- Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print dialog box.

Settings	Options for Envelopes
Paper Size	Com-10 DL C5 Monarch
Media Type	Envelopes Env. Thick Env. Thin

- After the printed envelope comes out of the machine, put in the next envelope. Repeat for each envelope that you want to print.
- When you have finished printing, return the two green levers you adjusted in the earlier step back to their original positions.
- When finished, close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



Related Information

- [Load Paper](#)
- [Print](#)

Change Print Settings Using the Control Panel



Select the type of document you want to print.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press **功能**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Printer] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Print Settings] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Graphics] or [Text] option, and then choose the option you want.
5. Press **OK**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Printer] > [Print Settings].
2. Press [Text] or [Graphics].
3. Press .

Related Information

- [Print](#)

Cancel a Print Job

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

**DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/
DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW**

Press **停止/退出**.




To cancel multiple print jobs, press and hold **停止/退出** for four seconds.

DCP-B7658DW

Press .



To cancel multiple print jobs, press and hold  for about four seconds.

Related Information

- [Print](#)

Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)

Test Print



If there are problems with print quality, follow these instructions to do a test print:

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press **功能**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Printer] option, and then press **OK**.
3. (For Printer Emulation Supported models)
Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Print Options] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Test Print] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press **启动**.
The machine prints a Test Print page.
6. Press **停止/退出**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Printer] > [Print Options] > [Test Print].
2. Press [Yes].
3. Press .

Related Information

- [Print](#)

Related Topics:

- [Improve the Print Quality](#)

Scan

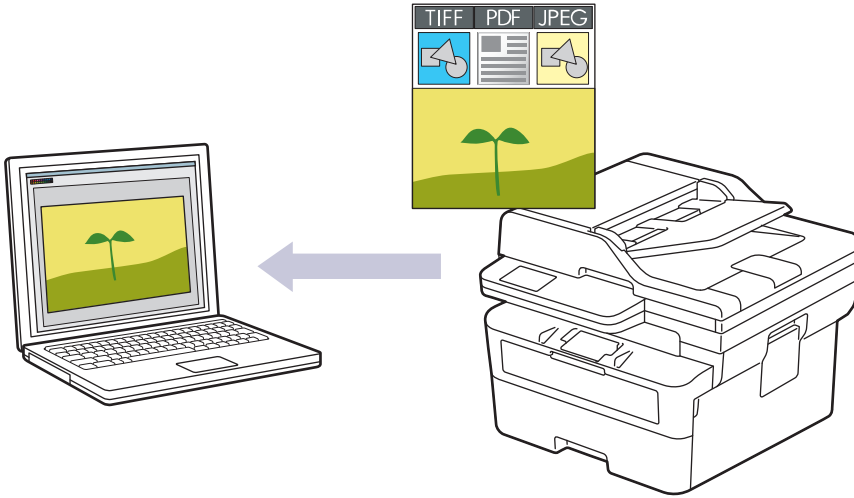
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)
- [Scan from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
- [Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine

- [Scan Photos and Graphics](#)
- [Scan Single or Multiple Pages to a Folder in a Single PDF File](#)
- [Scan to an Editable Text File \(OCR\)](#)
- [Save Scanned Data as an Email Attachment](#)
- [Scan to FTP](#)
- [Scan to Network \(Windows\)](#)
- [Use the Web Services Protocol for Network Scanning \(Windows 10 and Windows 11\)](#)
- [Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan](#)
- [Configure Certificates for Signed PDFs](#)
- [Disable Scanning from Your Computer](#)

Scan Photos and Graphics


Send scanned photos or graphics directly to your computer.



- **To scan from your machine:**
 - You must select your machine using Brother iPrint&Scan.
 - Use Brother iPrint&Scan to change scan settings such as file type and file storage location.For more information, see *Related Information: Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan*.
- **To scan from your computer:**
See *Related Information: Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan (Windows/Mac)*.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press  (扫描).
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [to PC] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Image] option, and then press **OK**.
5. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to select the destination computer.
6. Press **OK**.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, enter the four-digit PIN for the destination computer on the LCD and then press **OK**.

7. To change the scan settings for this document, press **选项** or **复印/扫描 选项**, press ▲ or ▼ to select the option you want, and then press **OK** to continue to the next scan setting. Skip this step if you want to use the default scan settings.
 - [Colour Setting]
 - [Resolution]
 - [File Type]
 - [Document Size]
 - [ADF Auto Deskew] (available only for certain models)
 - [Remove BkgClr] (available only for certain settings)



To change the scan settings, a computer with Brother iPrint&Scan installed must be connected to the machine.

8. Press **启动**.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

DCP-B7658DW


1. [Load your document](#).

2. Press [Scan] > [to PC] > [to Image].

3. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN for the computer, enter the four-digit PIN on the LCD and then press [OK].

4. To change the scan settings, press  [Options], and then select the scan settings you want to change. Skip this step if you want to use the default scan settings.

- [2-sided Scan] (available for certain models)
- [Scan Settings]
- [Colour Setting]
- [Resolution]
- [File Type]
- [Document Size]
- [Brightness]
- [Contrast] (available only for certain settings)
- [ADF Auto Deskew] (available for certain models)
- [Remove Background Colour]
(available only for certain settings)



- To change the scan settings, a computer with Brother iPrint&Scan installed must be connected to your machine.
- When your machine displays the [OK] button, press [OK].
- To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

5. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

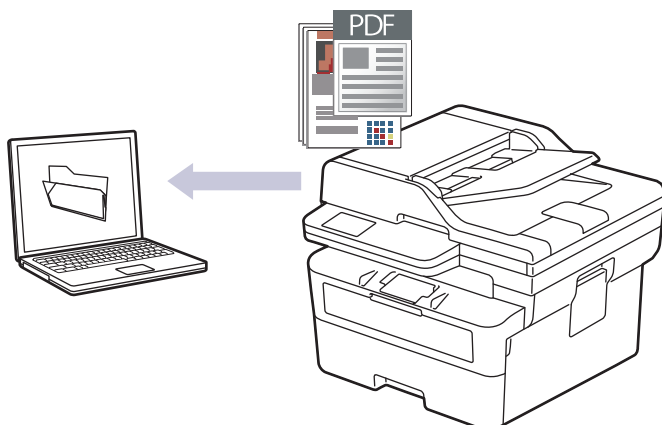
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:


- [Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan](#)
- [Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)

Scan Single or Multiple Pages to a Folder in a Single PDF File

Combine multiple pages into a single PDF document.





- **To scan from your machine:**
 - You must select your machine using Brother iPrint&Scan.
 - Use Brother iPrint&Scan to change scan settings such as file type and file storage location.For more information, see *Related Information: Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan*.
- **To scan from your computer:**
See *Related Information: Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan (Windows/Mac)*.

 When scanning multiple pages to a PDF file, set the file type on your machine to [PDF Multi-Page].

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press  (扫描).
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [to PC] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [File] option, and then press **OK**.
5. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to select the destination computer.
6. Press **OK**.

 If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, enter the four-digit PIN for the destination computer on the LCD and then press **OK**.

7. To change the scan settings for this document, press **选项** or **复印/扫描 选项**, press ▲ or ▼ to select the option you want, and then press **OK** to continue to the next scan setting. Skip this step if you want to use the default scan settings.
 - [Colour Setting]
 - [Resolution]
 - [File Type]
 - [Document Size]
 - [ADF Auto Deskew] (available only for certain models)

- [Remove Bkg Clr] (available only for certain settings)



To change the scan settings, a computer with Brother iPrint&Scan installed must be connected to the machine.

8. Press 启动.


The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press [Scan] > [to PC] > [to File].
3. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN for the computer, enter the four-digit PIN on the LCD and then press [OK].

4. To change the scan settings, press  [Options], and then select the scan settings you want to change. Skip this step if you want to use the default scan settings.

- [2-sided Scan] (available for certain models)
- [Scan Settings]
- [Colour Setting]
- [Resolution]
- [File Type]
- [Document Size]
- [Brightness]
- [Contrast] (available only for certain settings)
- [ADF Auto Deskew] (available for certain models)
- [Remove Background Colour]
(available only for certain settings)



- To change the scan settings, a computer with Brother iPrint&Scan installed must be connected to your machine.
- When your machine displays the [OK] button, press [OK].
- To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

5. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

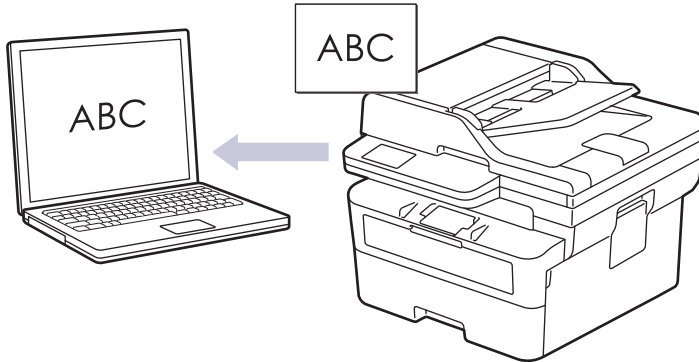
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan](#)
- [Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)

Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR)


Your machine can convert characters in a scanned document to text using the optical character recognition (OCR) technology. You can edit this text using your preferred text-editing application.



- The Scan to OCR feature is available only for certain languages.
- Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use Brother iPrint&Scan.

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press  (扫描).
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [to PC] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [OCR] option, and then press **OK**.
5. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to select the destination computer.
6. Press **OK**.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, enter the four-digit PIN for the destination computer on the LCD and then press **OK**.

7. To change the scan settings for this document, press **选项** or **复印/扫描 选项**, press ▲ or ▼ to select the option you want, and then press **OK** to continue to the next scan setting. Skip this step if you want to use the default scan settings.
 - [Colour Setting]
 - [Resolution]
 - [File Type]
 - [Document Size]
 - [ADF Auto Deskew] (available only for certain models)
 - [Remove Bkg Clr] (available only for certain settings)



To change the scan settings, a computer with Brother iPrint&Scan installed must be connected to the machine.

8. Press **启动**.


The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press [Scan] > [to PC] > [to OCR].
3. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN for the computer, enter the four-digit PIN on the LCD and then press [OK].

4. To change the scan settings, press  [Options], and then select the scan settings you want to change. Skip this step if you want to use the default scan settings.
 - [2-sided Scan] (available for certain models)
 - [Scan Settings]
 - [Colour Setting]
 - [Resolution]
 - [File Type]
 - [Document Size]
 - [Brightness]
 - [Contrast] (available only for certain settings)
 - [ADF Auto Deskew] (available for certain models)
 - [Remove Background Colour] (available only for certain settings)



- To change the scan settings, a computer with Brother iPrint&Scan installed must be connected to your machine.
- When your machine displays the [OK] button, press [OK].
- To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

5. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

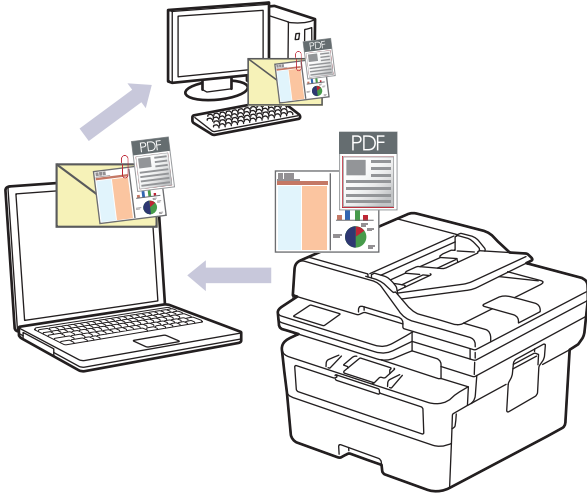
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan](#)

Save Scanned Data as an Email Attachment


Send the scanned data from your machine to your email application as an attachment.



- Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use Brother iPrint&Scan.
- To use this feature with your machine's Scan button, make sure you select one of these applications in Brother iPrint&Scan:
 - Windows: Microsoft Outlook
 - Mac: Apple MailFor other applications and Webmail services, use the Scan to Image or Scan to File feature to scan a document, and then attach the scanned file to an email message.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press  (扫描).
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [to PC] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [E-mail] option, and then press **OK**.
5. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to select the destination computer.
6. Press **OK**.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, enter the four-digit PIN for the destination computer on the LCD and then press **OK**.

7. To change the scan settings for this document, press **选项** or **复印/扫描 选项**, press ▲ or ▼ to select the option you want, and then press **OK** to continue to the next scan setting. Skip this step if you want to use the default scan settings.
 - [Colour Setting]
 - [Resolution]
 - [File Type]
 - [Document Size]
 - [ADF Auto Des skew] (available only for certain models)

- [Remove Bkg Clr] (available only for certain settings)



To change the scan settings, a computer with Brother iPrint&Scan installed must be connected to the machine.

8. Press 启动.

The machine scans the document and saves it as a file attachment. It then launches your email application and opens a new, blank email message with the scanned file attached.

DCP-B7658DW


1. Load your document.

2. Press [Scan] > [to PC] > [to E-mail].

3. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN for the computer, enter the four-digit PIN on the LCD and then press [OK].

4. To change the scan settings, press  [Options], and then select the scan settings you want to change. Skip this step if you want to use the default scan settings.

- [2-sided Scan] (available for certain models)
- [Scan Settings]
- [Colour Setting]
- [Resolution]
- [File Type]
- [Document Size]
- [Brightness]
- [Contrast] (available only for certain settings)
- [ADF Auto Deskew] (available for certain models)
- [Remove Background Colour]
(available only for certain settings)



- To change the scan settings, a computer with Brother iPrint&Scan installed must be connected to your machine.
- When your machine displays the [OK] button, press [OK].
- To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

5. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

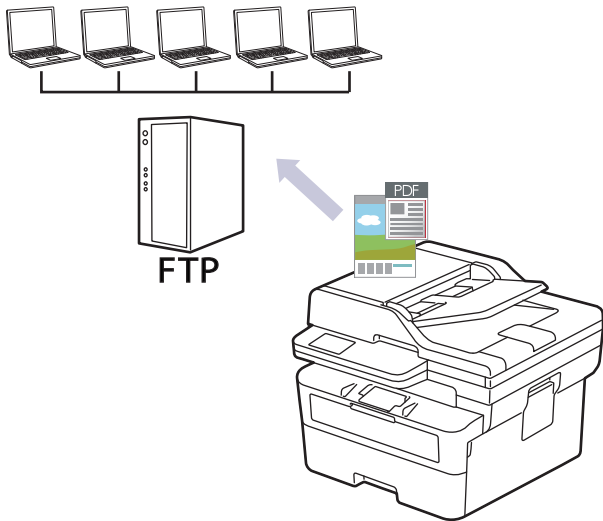
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan](#)

Scan to FTP

Scan documents directly to an FTP server when you need to share the scanned information. For added convenience, configure different profiles to save your favourite Scan to FTP destinations.



- [Set up a Scan to FTP Profile](#)
- [Upload Scanned Data to an FTP Server](#)

Set up a Scan to FTP Profile

Set up a Scan to FTP Profile to scan and upload the scanned data directly to an FTP location.

- We recommend using the latest version of the following web browsers:
 - Microsoft Edge, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Windows
 - Safari, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Mac
 - Google Chrome™ for Android™
 - Safari and Google Chrome™ for iOS
- Ensure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled, regardless of which browser you use.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Scan > Scan to FTP/Network**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Select the **FTP** option, and then click **Submit**.
6. In the left navigation bar, click **Scan > Scan to FTP/Network Profile**.
7. Select the profile you want to set up or change.



Using the following characters: ?, /, \, ", :, <, >, | or * may cause a sending error.

Option	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for this server profile (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The machine will display this name on the LCD.
Host Address	Type the Host Address (for example: ftp.example.com; up to 64 characters) or the IP address (for example: 192.23.56.189).
Port Number	Change the Port Number setting used to access the FTP server. The default setting is port 21. In most cases this setting does not need to be changed.
Username	Type a user name (up to 32 characters) of a user that has permission to write data to the FTP server.
Password	Type the password (up to 32 characters) associated with the user name you entered in the Username field. Type the password again in the Retype password field.
SSL/TLS	Set the SSL/TLS option to scan securely using SSL/TLS communication. Change the CA Certificate setting, if needed.
Store Directory	Type the path (up to 60 characters) to the folder on the FTP server where you want to send your scanned data. Do not type a slash mark at the beginning of the path (correct example: brother/abc).
File Name	Select a file name prefix from the preset names provided, or from user-defined names. The file name used for the scanned document will be

Option	Description
	the file name prefix you select, followed by the last six digits of the flatbed/ADF scanner counter and the file extension (for example: "Estimate_098765.pdf").
Quality	Select a quality setting. If you choose the User Select option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
File Type	Select the file type you want to use for the scanned document. If you choose the User Select option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
Document Size	Select your document size from the list. This is necessary to make sure the scanned file is the correct size. If you choose the User Select option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
File Size	Select your file size from the list. If you choose the User Select option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
Auto Deskew or ADF Auto Deskew	Select the Auto option to set the machine to correct document skewing automatically as the pages are scanned.
2-sided Scan (DCP-B7658DW)	Select the Long Edge or Short Edge option to scan both sides of the document, depending on the layout of your original.
Remove Background Color	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.
Document Separation (DCP-B7658DW)	Split a scanned image. When multiple documents have been scanned, you can split and save the documents separately by using this function.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
Passive Mode	Set the Passive Mode option to off or on depending on your FTP server and network firewall configuration. The default setting is on. In most cases, this setting does not need to be changed.

8. Click **Submit**.



Related Information


- [Scan to FTP](#)

Upload Scanned Data to an FTP Server

Share scanned information by saving it to your FTP server.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. [Load your document.](#)
2. Press  (扫描).
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [to FTP] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the profiles listed, and then press **OK**.

If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.

5. Press 启动.

The LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the FTP server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

DCP-B7658DW

1. [Load your document.](#)
2. Press [Scan] > [to FTP].
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the network server profiles listed. If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing, or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.
4. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

Related Information

- [Scan to FTP](#)

Scan to Network (Windows)

Related Models: DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

Scan documents directly to a CIFS server on your local network. For added convenience, you can configure different profiles to save your favourite Scan to Network destinations.

- [Set up a Scan to Network Profile](#)
- [Upload Scanned Data to a CIFS Server](#)

Set up a Scan to Network Profile

Related Models: DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

Set up a Scan to Network Profile to scan and upload scanned data directly to a folder on a CIFS server.

- We recommend using the latest version of the following web browsers:
 - Microsoft Edge, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Windows
 - Safari, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Mac
 - Google Chrome™ for Android™
 - Safari and Google Chrome™ for iOS
- Ensure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled, regardless of which browser you use.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Scan > Scan to FTP/Network**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Select the **Network** option, and then click **Submit**.
6. In the left navigation bar, click **Scan > Scan to FTP/Network Profile**.
7. Select the profile you want to set up or change.



Using the following characters: ?, /, \, ", :, <, >, | or * may cause a sending error.

Option	Description
Profile Name	Type a name for this server profile (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The machine will display this name on the LCD.
Network Folder Path	Type the path to the folder on the CIFS server where you want to send your scanned data.
File Name	Select a file name prefix from the preset names provided, or from user-defined names. The file name used for the scanned document will be the file name prefix you select, followed by the last six digits of the flatbed/ADF scanner counter and the file extension (for example: "Estimate_098765.pdf").
Quality	Select a quality setting. If you choose the User Select option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
File Type	Select the file type you want to use for the scanned document. If you choose the User Select option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.

Option	Description
Document Size	Select your document size from the list. This is necessary to make sure the scanned file is the correct size. If you choose the User Select option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
File Size	Select your file size from the list. If you choose the User Select option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
Auto Deskew or ADF Auto Deskew	Select the Auto option to set the machine to correct document skewing automatically as the pages are scanned.
2-sided Scan (DCP-B7658DW)	Select the Long Edge or Short Edge option to scan both sides of the document, depending on the layout of your original.
Remove Background Color	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.
Document Separation (DCP-B7658DW)	Split a scanned image. When multiple documents have been scanned, you can split and save the documents separately by using this function.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
Use PIN for Authentication	To PIN-protect this profile, select On and type a four-digit PIN in the PIN Code field.
Auth. Method	To set your authentication method, select Auto , Kerberos , or NTLMv2 .
Username	Type a user name (up to 96 characters) of a user that has permission to write data to the folder specified in the Network Folder Path field. If the user name is part of a domain, enter the user name in one of the following styles: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • user@domain • domain\user
Password	Type the password (up to 32 characters) associated with the user name you entered in the Username field. Type the password again in the Retype password field.
Kerberos Server Address	When you select Kerberos for the Auth. Method option, you must type the Kerberos Server Address (for example: kerberos.example.com; up to 64 characters).

- Click **Submit**.
- You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server) for all authentication methods. The machine's time must match the time used by the Kerberos Server and CIFS Server.



Related Information

- [Scan to Network \(Windows\)](#)

Related Topics:


- [Synchronise Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)

Upload Scanned Data to a CIFS Server

Related Models: DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

>> DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/
DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/ DCP-B7648DW

1. [Load your document.](#)
2. Press  (扫描).
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [to Network] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the profiles listed, and then press **OK**. If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, enter the four-digit PIN for the destination computer on the LCD and then press **OK**.

5. Press 启动.
The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/ DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

1. [Load your document.](#)
2. Press [Scan] > [to Network].
3. When the server profiles you set up using Web Based Management appear, select the profile you want. If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing, or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.
4. Press [Start].
The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

- [Scan to Network \(Windows\)](#)



Use the Web Services Protocol for Network Scanning (Windows 10 and Windows 11)

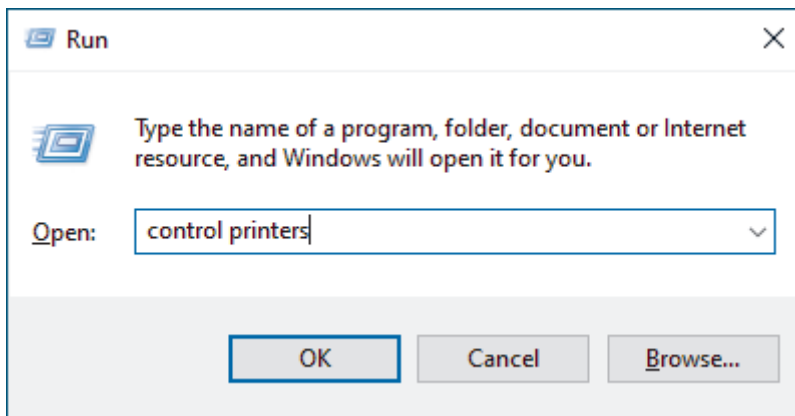
The Web Services protocol enables Windows 10 and Windows 11 users to scan using a Brother machine on the network. You must install the driver via Web Services.

- [Use the Web Services Protocol to Install the Scanner Driver \(Windows 10 and Windows 11\)](#)
- [Scan From Your Machine Using the Web Services Protocol \(Windows 10 and Windows 11\)](#)
- [Configure Scan Settings for the Web Services Protocol](#)


Use the Web Services Protocol to Install the Scanner Driver (Windows 10 and Windows 11)

- Make sure you have installed the correct software and drivers for your machine.
- Verify that the host computer and the Brother machine are on the same subnet, or that the router is correctly configured to pass data between the two devices.
- You must configure the IP address on your Brother machine before you configure this setting.


1. Hold down the  key and press the  key on the computer's keyboard to launch **Run**.
2. Type "**control printers**" in the **Open:** field and click **OK**.



The **Devices and Printers** window appears.

 If the **Devices and Printers** window does not appear, click **View more devices > More devices and printer settings**.

3. Click **Add a device**.



- The Web Services Name for the Brother machine is your model's name and the MAC Address.
- Move your mouse over the machine's name to display the machine's information.

4. Select the machine you want to install, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

 To uninstall the drivers, click **Uninstall** or  (**Remove device**).

Related Information

- [Use the Web Services Protocol for Network Scanning \(Windows 10 and Windows 11\)](#)


Scan From Your Machine Using the Web Services Protocol (Windows 10 and Windows 11)

If you have installed the scanner driver via Web Services, you can access the Web Services scanning menu on your machine's LCD.

Certain characters in the messages displayed on the LCD may be replaced with spaces if the language settings of your operating system and your machine are different.

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. [Load your document.](#)
2. Press  (扫描).
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Web Service] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of scan you want to do, and then press **OK**.
5. Select the destination computer where you want to send the scan, and then press **OK**.
6. Press 启动.
The machine starts scanning.



DCP-B7658DW

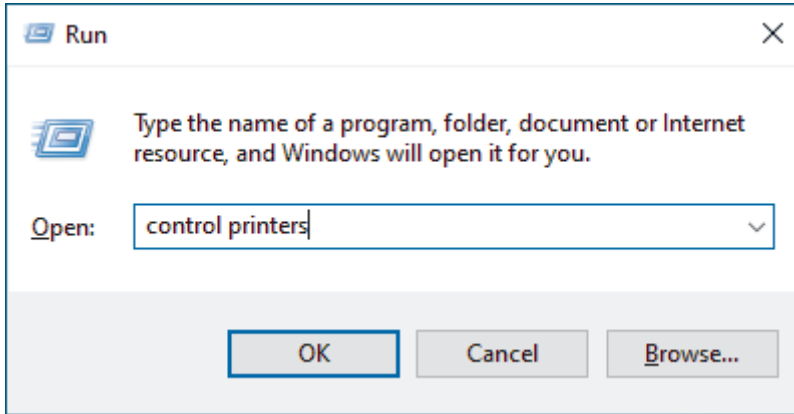
1. [Load your document.](#)
2. Press [Scan] > [WS Scan].
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the scan options, and then press the type of scan.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer name where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.
5. Press [Start].
The machine starts scanning.

Related Information

- [Use the Web Services Protocol for Network Scanning \(Windows 10 and Windows 11\)](#)

Configure Scan Settings for the Web Services Protocol

1. Hold down the  key and press the  key on the computer's keyboard to launch **Run**.
2. Type "**control printers**" in the **Open:** field and click **OK**.



The **Devices and Printers** window appears.



If the **Devices and Printers** window does not appear, click **View more devices > More devices and printer settings**.

3. Right-click the machine icon, and then select **Scan profiles....** The **Scan Profiles** dialog box appears.
4. Select the scan profile you want to use.
5. Make sure the scanner selected in the **Scanner** list is a machine that supports Web Services for scanning, and then click the **Set as Default** button.
6. Click **Edit....**

The **Edit Default Profile** dialog box appears.

7. Select the **Source**, **Paper size**, **Color format**, **File type**, **Resolution (DPI)**, **Brightness** and **Contrast** settings.
8. Click the **Save Profile** button.

These settings will be applied when you scan using the Web Services protocol.

If the machine prompts you to select a scanning application, select Windows Fax and Scan from the list.



Related Information

- [Use the Web Services Protocol for Network Scanning \(Windows 10 and Windows 11\)](#)

Change the Scan Button Settings from Brother iPrint&Scan

Brother iPrint&Scan allows you to change the machine's Scan Button settings.

1. Start Brother iPrint&Scan.

- Windows:

Double-click the  (Brother iPrint&Scan) icon on your computer's desktop.

For more information, see *Related Information*.

- Mac:

In the **Finder** menu bar, click **Go > Applications**, and then double-click the iPrint&Scan icon.

The Brother iPrint&Scan screen appears.

NOTE

To download the latest application:

- For Windows:

Go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads, and then download and install Brother iPrint&Scan.

- For Mac:

Download and install Brother iPrint&Scan from the Apple App Store.

2. If your Brother machine is not selected, click the **Select your Machine** button, and then follow the on-screen instructions to select your Brother machine.
3. Click the **Machine Scan Settings** button, and then follow the on-screen instructions to change the scan settings, such as document size, colour, and resolution.



Related Information

- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
- [Access Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
- [Scan Photos and Graphics](#)
- [Scan Single or Multiple Pages to a Folder in a Single PDF File](#)
- [Scan to an Editable Text File \(OCR\)](#)
- [Save Scanned Data as an Email Attachment](#)

Configure Certificates for Signed PDFs

If you select Signed PDF for Scan features, you must configure a certificate on your machine using Web Based Management.

To use Signed PDF, you must install a certificate on your machine and your computer.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Administrator > Signed PDF**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

Signed PDF

Select the Certificate

(To use the Signed PDF, you need to configure the certificate.
You can configure the certificate by clicking the link below.)

[Certificate>>](#)

5. Click the **Select the Certificate** drop-down list, and then select the certificate.
6. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)
-

Disable Scanning from Your Computer

To disable the scan function on your computer, disable the Pull Scan setting using Web Based Management.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Scan > Scan from PC**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. In the **Pull Scan** field, click **Disabled**.
6. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)


Scan from Your Computer (Windows)

There are several ways you can use your computer to scan photos and documents on your machine. Use the software applications we provide or use your favourite scanning application.

- [Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
- [Scan Using Nuance™ PaperPort™ 14SE or Other Windows Applications](#)
- [Scan Using Windows Fax and Scan](#)

Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan (Windows/Mac)

1. Load your document.
 2. Start Brother iPrint&Scan.
 - Windows:

Double-click the  (Brother iPrint&Scan) icon on your computer's desktop.

For more information, see *Related Information*.
 - Mac:

In the **Finder** menu bar, click **Go > Applications**, and then double-click the iPrint&Scan icon.
- The Brother iPrint&Scan screen appears.

NOTE

To download the latest application:

- For Windows:

Go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads, and then download and install Brother iPrint&Scan.
- For Mac:

Download and install Brother iPrint&Scan from the Apple App Store.

3. If your Brother machine is not selected, click the **Select your Machine** button, and then select your model's name from the list. Click **OK**.
4. Click the **Scan** icon.
5. Configure the scan settings, and then click the **Scan** button to start scanning.
6. After all the documents have been scanned, select the option for saving and sharing scanned data.
7. Configure detailed settings, including the **File Name** and the **File Type**.



To combine multiple scans into a file, select PDF as the **File Type**.

8. Complete the scanning process.



Related Information


- [Scan from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [Access Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
- [Scan Photos and Graphics](#)
- [Scan Single or Multiple Pages to a Folder in a Single PDF File](#)



Scan Using Nuance™ PaperPort™ 14SE or Other Windows Applications

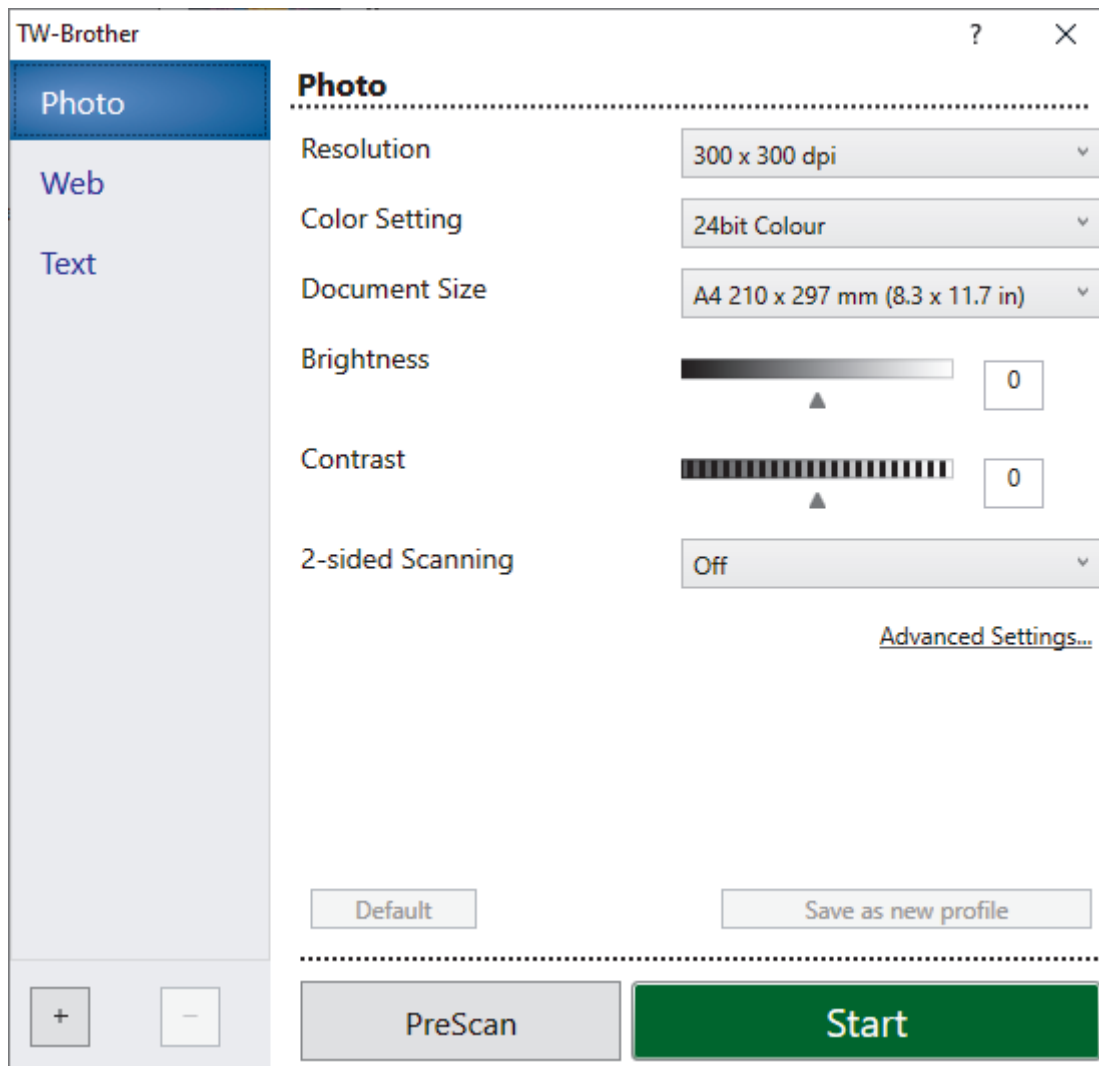
You can use the Nuance™ PaperPort™ 14SE application for scanning.

- To download the Nuance™ PaperPort™ 14SE application, click  (**Brother Utilities**), select **Do More** in the left navigation bar, and then click **PaperPort**.
- Nuance™ PaperPort™ 14SE supports Windows 10 and Windows 11.
- For detailed instructions on using each application, click the application's **Help** menu, and then click **Getting Started Guide** in the **Help** ribbon.



The instructions for scanning in these steps are for PaperPort™ 14SE. For other Windows applications, the steps will be similar. PaperPort™ 14SE supports both TWAIN and WIA drivers; the TWAIN driver (recommended) is used in these steps.

1. [Load your document](#).
2. Start PaperPort™ 14SE.
Do one of the following:
 - Windows 11
Click  > **All apps** > **Nuance PaperPort 14** > **PaperPort**.
 - Windows 10
Click  > **Nuance PaperPort 14** > **PaperPort**.
3. Click the **Desktop** menu, and then click **Scan Settings** in the **Desktop** ribbon.
The **Scan or Get Photo** panel appears on the left side of the screen.
4. Click **Select**.
5. From the available Scanners list, select your model with **TWAIN: TW** in the name.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Select the **Display scanner dialog box** checkbox in the **Scan or Get Photo** panel.
8. Click **Scan**.
The Scanner Setup dialog box appears.



9. Adjust the settings in the Scanner Setup dialog box, if needed.
10. Click the **Document Size** drop-down list, and then select your document size.



To scan both sides of the document (DCP-B7658DW):
Automatic 2-sided scan is available only when using the ADF.
You cannot use PreScan to preview the scanned image.

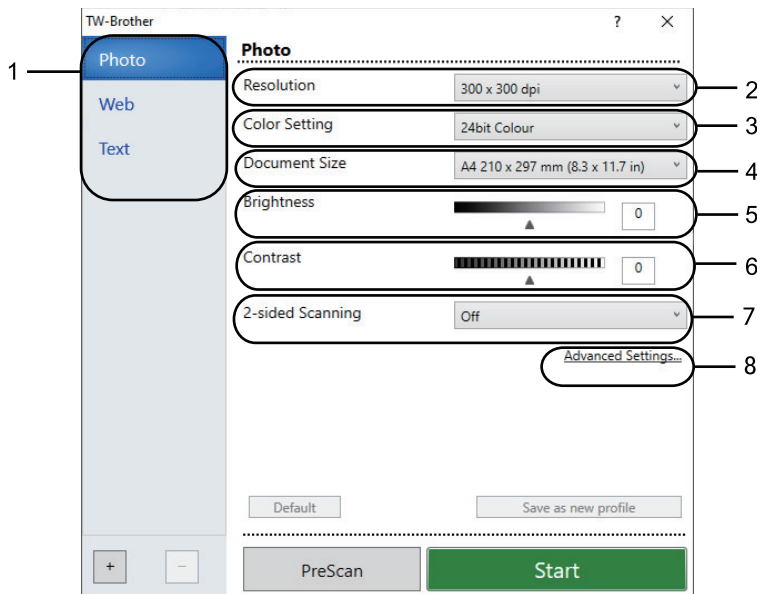
11. Click **PreScan** to preview your image and crop unwanted portions before scanning.
12. Click **Start**.
The machine starts scanning.



Related Information

- [Scan from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
 - [TWAIN Driver Settings \(Windows\)](#)

TWAIN Driver Settings (Windows)



- Note that the item names and assignable values will vary depending on the machine.
- The **Contrast** option is available only when selecting the **Gray (Error Diffusion)**, **True Gray**, or **24bit Color** options from the **Color Setting** drop-down list.

1. Scan

Select the **Photo**, **Web**, or **Text** option depending on the type of document you want to scan.

Scan (Image Type)		Resolution	Colour Setting
Photo	Use for scanning photo images.	300 x 300 dpi	24bit Color
Web	Use for attaching scanned images to web pages.	100 x 100 dpi	24bit Color
Text	Use for scanning text documents.	200 x 200 dpi	Black & White

2. Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

3. Color Setting

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

- Black & White**
Use for text or line art images.
- Gray (Error Diffusion)**
Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are arranged in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)
- True Gray**
Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.
- 24bit Color**
Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

4. Document Size

Select the exact size of your document from a selection of preset scan sizes.

If you select **Custom**, the **Custom Document Size** dialog box appears and you can specify the document size.

5. Brightness

Set the brightness level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value in the field to set the brightness level.

6. Contrast

Increase or decrease the contrast level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value in the field to set the contrast level.

7. 2-sided Scanning (DCP-B7658DW)

Scan both sides of the document. When using the Automatic 2-sided Scan feature, you must select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option from the **2-sided Scanning** drop-down list, so that when you turn the pages, they are facing the way you want.

8. Advanced Settings

Configure advanced settings by clicking the **Advanced Settings** button in the Scan Settings dialog box.

- **Document Correction**

- **Auto Deskew**

- Set the machine to correct document skewing automatically as the pages are scanned.

- **Detect End of Page (ADF)**

- Detects the end of page and automatically adjusts the size of a page when the length of the document scanned from the ADF is shorter than the selected document size.

- **Rotate Image**

- Rotate the scanned image.

- **Fill With Color**

- Fill in the edges on four sides of the scanned image using the selected colour and range.

- **Enhancement**

- **Background Processing**

- **Remove Bleed-through / Pattern**

- Prevent bleed-through.

- **Remove Background Color**

- Remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.

- **Colour Drop**

- Select a colour to remove from the scanned image.

- **Edge Emphasis**

- Make the characters of the original sharper.

- **Reduce Noise**

- Improve the quality of your scanned images with this selection. The **Reduce Noise** option is available when selecting the **24bit Color** option and the **300 x 300 dpi**, **400 x 400 dpi**, or **600 x 600 dpi** scan resolution.

- **B&W Image Quality**

- **Character Correction**

- **Blurred Character Correction**

- Correct the broken or incomplete characters of the original to make them easier to read.

- **Boldface Formatting**

- Emphasise the characters of the original by making them bold.

-
- **B&W Inversion**
Invert black and white in the monochrome image.
 - **Feed Control**
 - **Layout** (DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW)
Select the layout.
 - **Continuous scan**
Select this option to scan multiple pages. After a page is scanned, select whether to continue scanning or finish.



Related Information

- [Scan Using Nuance™ PaperPort™ 14SE or Other Windows Applications](#)
-

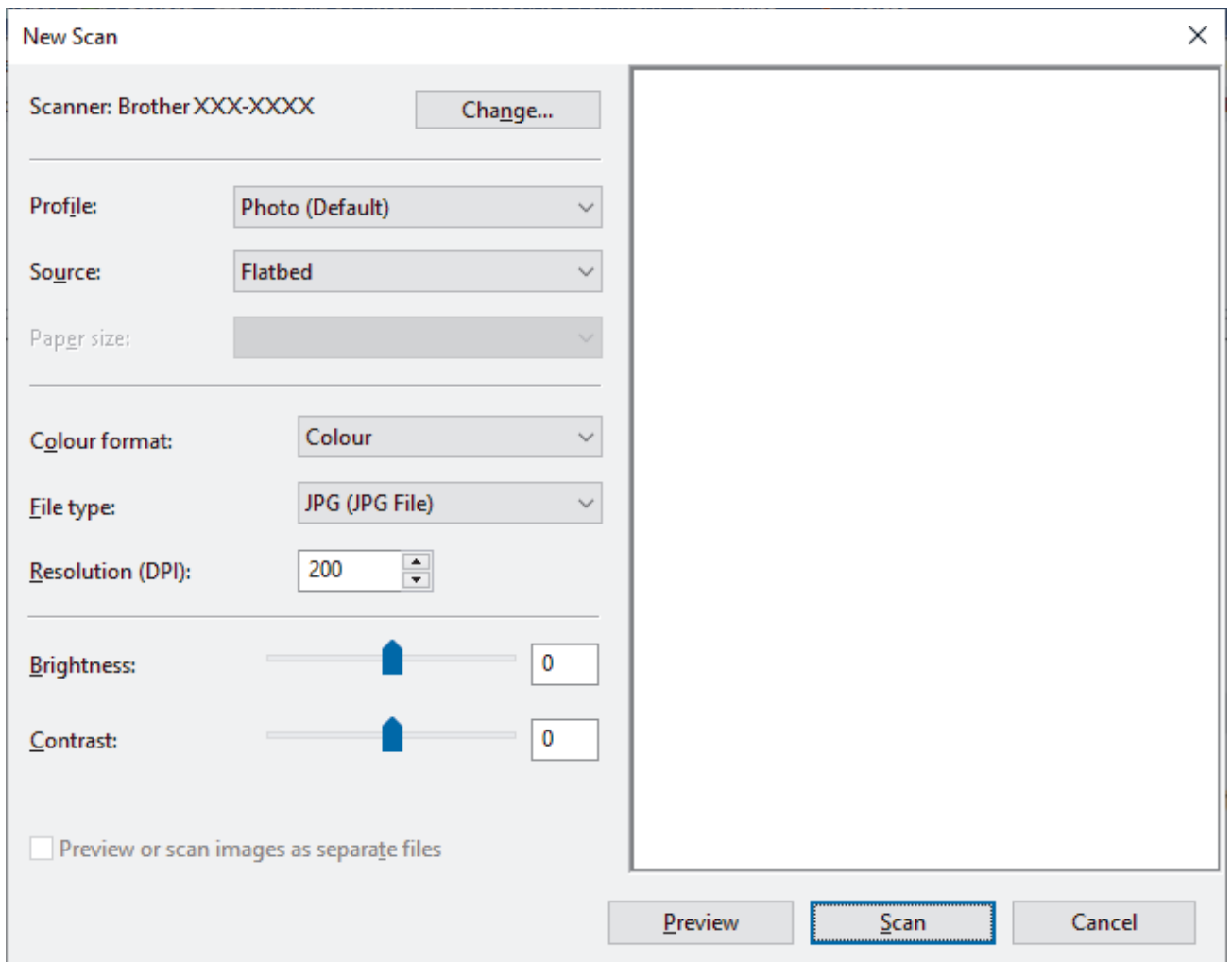
Scan Using Windows Fax and Scan

The Windows Fax and Scan application is another option that you can use for scanning.

- Windows Fax and Scan uses the WIA scanner driver.
- To crop a portion of a page after pre-scanning a document, you must scan using the scanner glass (also called the flatbed).

1. [Load your document](#).
2. Launch Windows Fax and Scan.
3. Click **File > New > Scan**.
4. Select the scanner you want to use.
5. Click **OK**.

The **New Scan** dialog box appears.



6. Adjust the settings in the dialog box, if needed.

The scanner resolution can be set to a maximum of 1200 dpi. If you want to scan at higher resolutions, use the **Scanner Utility** software from **Brother Utilities**.

If your machine supports 2-sided scanning and you want to scan both sides of your document, select **Feeder (Scan both sides)** from the **Source** drop-down list.

7. Click **Scan**.

The machine starts scanning the document.



Related Information

- [Scan from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
 - [WIA Driver Settings \(Windows\)](#)
-

WIA Driver Settings (Windows)

The screenshot shows the 'New Scan' dialog box with the following settings:

- Scanner: Brother XXX-XXXX (Change... button)
- Profile: Photo (Default)
- Source: Flatbed
- Paper size: (empty)
- Colour format: Colour
- File type: JPG (JPG File)
- Resolution (DPI): 200
- Brightness: 0
- Contrast: 0
- Preview or scan images as separate files
- Buttons: Preview, Scan, Cancel

Profile

Select the scan profile you want to use from the **Profile** drop-down list.

Source

Select the **Flatbed**, **Feeder (Scan one side)**, or **Feeder (Scan both sides)** option from the drop-down list.

Paper size

The **Paper size** option is available if you select the **Feeder (Scan one side)** or **Feeder (Scan both sides)** option from the **Source** drop-down list.

Color format

Select a scan colour format from the **Color format** drop-down list.

File type

Select a file format from the **File type** drop-down list.

Resolution (DPI)

Set a scanning resolution in the **Resolution (DPI)** field. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

Brightness

Set the brightness level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a

higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value in the field to set the brightness level.

Contrast

Increase or decrease the contrast level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value in the field to set the contrast level.



Related Information

- [Scan Using Windows Fax and Scan](#)

Scan from Your Computer (Mac)

- [Scan Using Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
- [Scan Using AirPrint \(macOS\)](#)

Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management

- [Set the Scan File Name Using Web Based Management](#)

Set the Scan File Name Using Web Based Management

Set up a file name for scanned data using Web Based Management.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Scan > Scan File Name**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Select the **File Name Style** from the drop-down list.
6. If you selected the option to include the date in **File Name Style** field, select the date format from the drop-down list.
7. In the **Time** field, select **On** to include the time information in the file name.
8. In the **Counter** field, select **Continuous** or **Reset after each job**.



If you select **Reset after each job**, duplication of file names may occur.

9. If you want to create a user-defined file name prefix, type a file name in the user-defined fields of each scan function.



Do not use the following characters: ? / \ *

10. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Copy

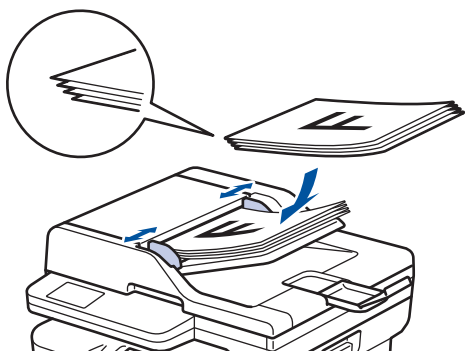
- [Copy on One Side of the Paper \(1-sided\)](#)
- [Copy on Both Sides of the Paper \(2-sided\)](#)
- [Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images](#)
- [Make N in 1 Copies Using the Page Layout Feature](#)
- [Sort Copies](#)
- [Copy an ID Card](#)
- [Copy an ID Card or Bills](#)
- [Copy Options](#)

Copy on One Side of the Paper (1-sided)

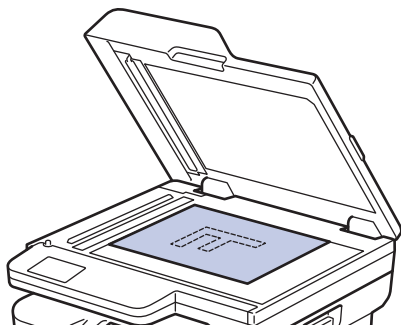
>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Place the document *face up* in the ADF. (available only for certain models)
(If you are copying multiple pages, we recommend using the ADF.)



- Place the document *face down* on the scanner glass.



NOTE

For important or fragile documents, use the machine's scanner glass.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number of copies you want.

The LCD displays:

```
Sort   Copies:01
100%■■■■ Auto
```

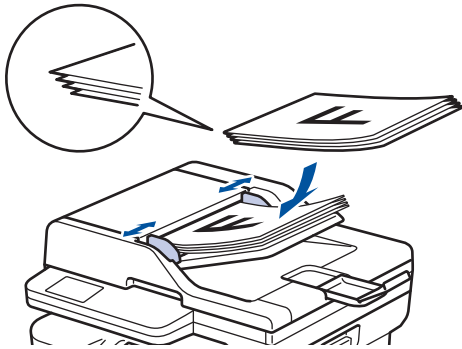
4. Press 启动.

DCP-B7658DW

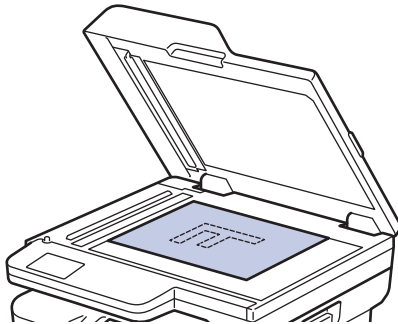
1. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.

2. Do one of the following:

- Place the document *face up* in the ADF.
(If you are copying multiple pages, we recommend using the ADF.)



- Place the document *face down* on the scanner glass.



NOTE


For important or fragile documents, use the machine's scanner glass.

3. Press  ([Copy]).

The LCD displays:



4. To enter the number of copies you want, do one of the following:

- Press [-] or [+] using the LCD.
- Press  to display a numeric keypad on the LCD, and then enter the number of copies. Press [OK].

5. Press [Start].

✓ Related Information

- [Copy](#)

Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided)

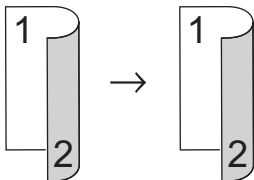
Related Models: DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

Reduce the amount of paper you use by copying onto both sides of the paper.

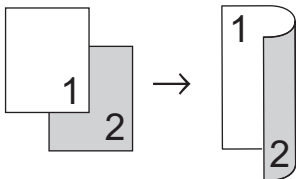
- You must choose a 2-sided copy layout from the following options before you can start 2-sided copying.
- The layout of your original document determines which 2-sided copy layout you should choose.
- (For ADF models) For important or fragile documents, use the machine's scanner glass.
- (For ADF models) To use the automatic 2-sided copy feature, you must load your document in the ADF.
- When you manually make 2-sided copies from a 2-sided document, use the scanner glass.
- Select A4 sized paper when using the 2-sided copy option.

Portrait

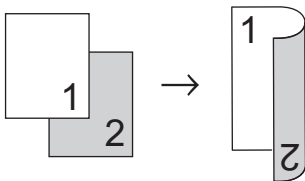
2-sided to 2-sided



1-sided to 2-sided (Long Edge Flip)

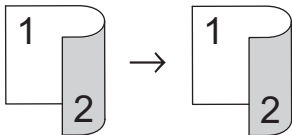


1-sided to 2-sided (Short Edge Flip)

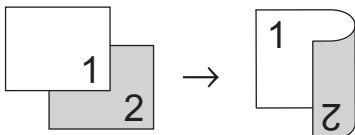


Landscape

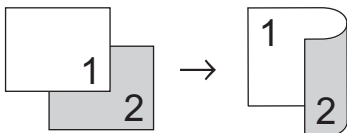
2-sided to 2-sided



1-sided to 2-sided (Long Edge Flip)



1-sided to 2-sided (Short Edge Flip)



>> [DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW


1. Load your document.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number of copies you want.
3. Press 复印/扫描 选项.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [2-sided], and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display [Layout Long] or [Layout Short], and then press **OK**.
6. Select flip on long edge or flip on short edge, and then press **OK**.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to display [2sided → 2sided] or [1sided → 2sided], and then press **OK**.

NOTE

(For DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW) If you select [2sided → 2sided], you cannot use the ADF. Use the scanner glass.

8. Press 启动.
(DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW) If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
If you are using the scanner glass, go to the next step.
9. After the machine scans the page, place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press ▲ to scan the next page.
10. After scanning all the pages, press ▼ to select the [No] option.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press  ([Copy]).
3. Enter the number of copies.
4. Press [Options].
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [2-sided Copy] option, and then press [2-sided Copy].
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the layout options, and then press the option you want.
7. When finished, press [OK].
8. Press [Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
If you are using the scanner glass, go to the next step.
9. After the machine scans the page, place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the next page.
10. When finished, press [Finish] to finish.

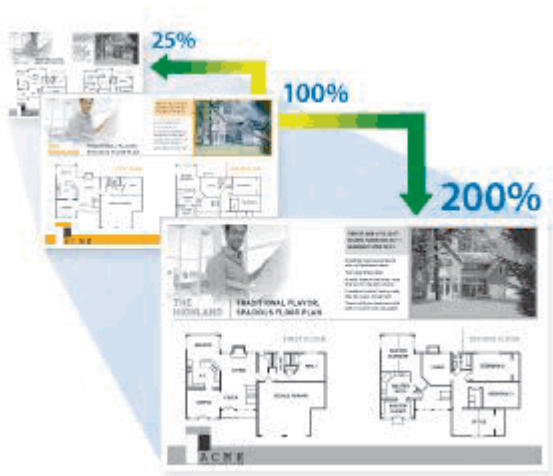


Related Information

- [Copy](#)

Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images

Select an enlargement or reduction ratio to resize your copied data.



>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW


DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW



1. Load your document.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number of copies you want.
3. Press 复印/扫描 选项.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Enlarge/Reduce], and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the option you want. Press **OK**.
6. Do one of the following:
 - If you select [Enlarge] or [Reduce], press ▲ or ▼ to select the enlargement or reduction ratio you want to use. Press **OK**.
 - If you select [Custom (25-400%)], press ▲ or ▼ to enter an enlargement or reduction ratio from [25%] to [400%] and then press **OK**.
 - If you select [100%], go to the next step.
7. When finished, press 启动.



- [Auto] sets the machine to calculate the reduction ratio that best fits the size of paper.
- [Auto] is only available when using the ADF.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press  ([Copy]).
3. Enter the number of copies.
4. Press [Options].
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Enlarge/Reduce] option, and then press [Enlarge/Reduce].
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the available options, and then press the option you want to change.
7. Do one of the following:
 - If you select [Enlarge] or [Reduce], press the enlargement or reduction ratio you want to use.

-
- If you select [Custom(25-400%)], press  (backspace) to erase the displayed percentage, or press  to move the cursor, and then enter an enlargement or reduction ratio from [25%] to [400%] .
Press [OK].
 - If you selected [100%] or the [Auto] option, go to the next step.

8. When finished, press [OK].

9. Press [Start].



-
- [Auto] sets the machine to calculate the reduction ratio that best fits the size of paper.
 - [Auto] is only available when using the ADF.
-



Related Information

- [Copy](#)
-

Make N in 1 Copies Using the Page Layout Feature

The N in 1 copy feature saves paper by copying two or four pages of your document onto one page of the copy.








>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number of copies you want.
3. Press 复印/扫描 选项.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Page Layout], and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Off(1 in 1)], [2 in 1(P)], [2 in 1(L)], [4 in 1(P)] or [4 in 1(L)], and then press **OK**.
6. Press 启动.
If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
If you are using the scanner glass, go to the next step.
7. After the machine scans the page, place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press ▲ to scan the next page.
8. After scanning all the pages, press ▼ to select the [No] option.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Load your document.
2. Press  ([Copy]).
3. Enter the number of copies.
4. Press [Options].
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Page Layout] option, and then press [Page Layout].
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the options, and then press the option you want.

Option	Description
2in1 (Portrait)	
2in1 (Landscape)	
4in1 (Portrait)	
4in1 (Landscape)	

7. When finished, press [OK].
8. Press [Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
If you are using the scanner glass, go to the next step.
9. After the machine scans the page, place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the next page.
10. When finished, press [Finish] to finish.



Related Information

- [Copy](#)

Sort Copies


Sort multiple copies. Pages will be stacked in the order they are fed, that is: 1, 2, 3, and so on.

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. [Load your document.](#)
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number of copies you want.
3. Press 复印/扫描 选项.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Stack/Sort], and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Sort], and then press **OK**.
6. Press 启动.
(DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW) If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
If you are using the scanner glass, go to the next step.
7. After the machine scans the page, place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press ▲ to scan the next page.
8. After scanning all the pages, press ▼ to select the [No] option.

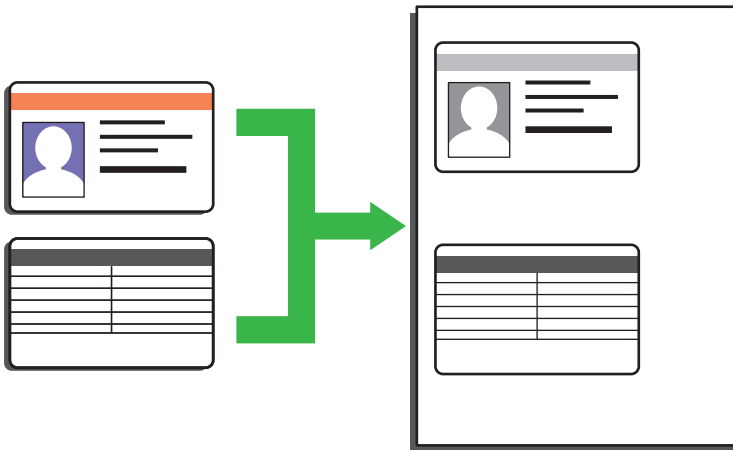
DCP-B7658DW

1. [Load your document.](#)
2. Press  ([Copy]).
3. Enter the number of copies.
4. Press [Options].
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Stack/Sort] option, and then press [Stack/Sort].
6. Press [Sort].
7. When finished, press [OK].
8. Press [Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
If you are using the scanner glass, go to the next step.
9. After the machine scans the page, place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the next page.
10. When finished, press [Finish] to finish.

Related Information

- [Copy](#)

Copy an ID Card

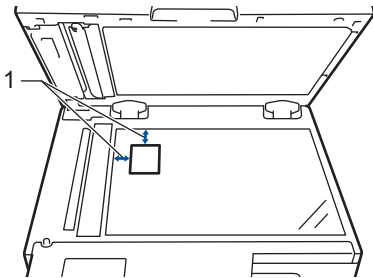


You may copy an identification card only to the extent permitted under applicable laws. For more detailed information, see the *Product Safety Guide*.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Place an identification card *face down* near the upper left corner of the scanner glass.



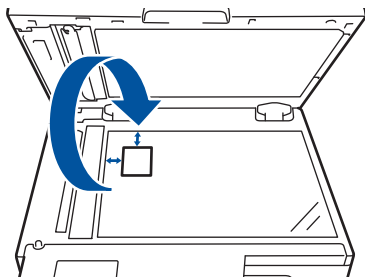
1: Distance 4.0 mm or greater (top, left)

2. Press **身份证双面复印**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to enter the number of copies you want.



You can change copy settings by pressing **复印/扫描 选项**.

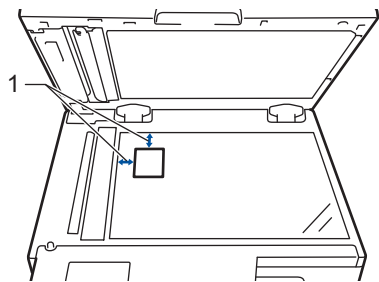
4. Press **启动**.
The machine scans one side of the identification card.
5. After the machine has scanned the first side, turn over the identification card.



6. Press **启动** to scan the other side.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Place your identification card *face down* near the upper left corner of the scanner glass.



1 4.0 mm or greater (top, left)

2. Press  ([Copy]).

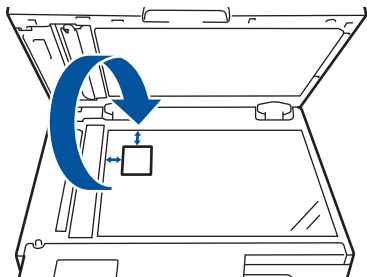
3. Press [ID].

4. Enter the number of copies.

5. Press [Start].

The machine scans one side of the identification card.

6. After the machine has scanned the first side, turn over the identification card and press [Continue] to scan the other side.



Related Information

- [Copy](#)

Copy an ID Card or Bills

Related Models: DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7658DW

Use the Billings Copy feature to copy an identification card and Bills with preset copy settings.

Copy an identification card only to the extent permitted under applicable laws. For more detailed information, see the *Product Safety Guide*.

>> [DCP-B7638DN](#)

>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7638DN


1. Place an identification card or bills *face down* in the upper left corner of the scanner glass.
2. Press 票据.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number of copies you want.



You can change copy settings by pressing 复印/扫描 选项.

4. Press 启动.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Place an identification card or bills *face down* in the upper left corner of the scanner glass.
2. Press  ([Billings Copy]).
3. Enter the number of copies.
4. Press the option you want:
5. Press [Start].



Related Information

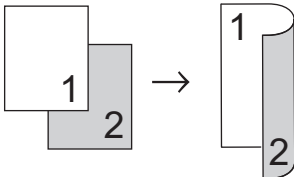
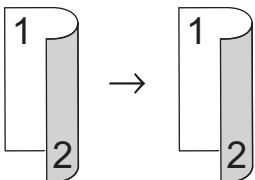
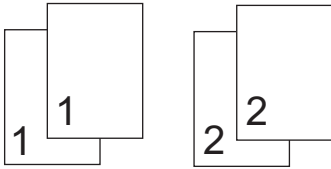
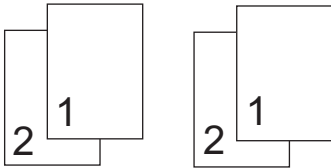
- [Copy](#)

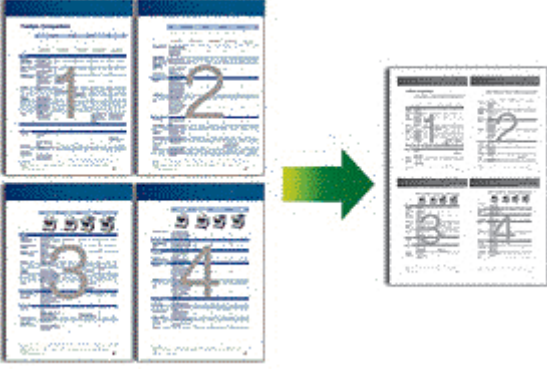
Copy Options

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

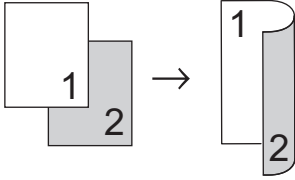
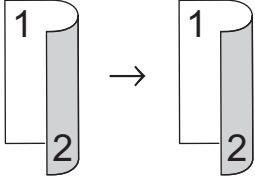
To change Copy settings, press the 复印/扫描 选项 button.

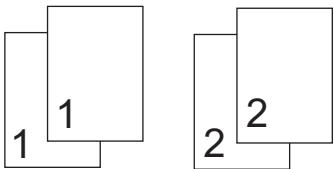
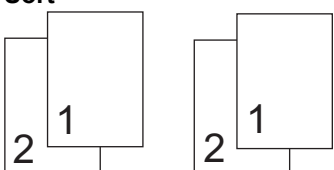
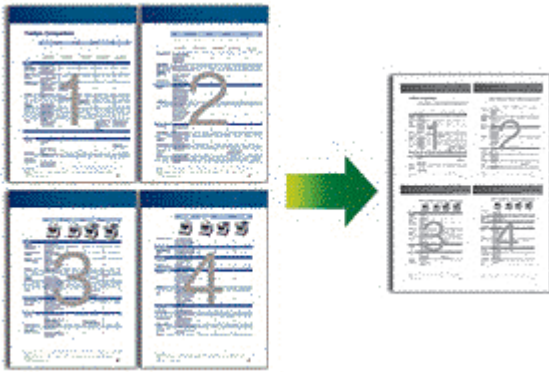
Menu selections	Options	
Quality	Select the copy quality for your type of document.	
Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-
	Enlarge	Select an enlargement ratio for the next copy.
	Reduce	Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.
	Auto (DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW)	Adjusts the copy size to fit the paper size you have set.
	Custom (25-400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.
Density	Increase the density to make the text darker. Decrease the density to make the text lighter.	
2-sided (DCP-B7578DW/ DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/ DCP-B7648DW/ DCP-B7658DW)	Select to copy on both sides of the paper. 1-sided → 2-sided  2-sided → 2-sided 	
Contrast	Increase the contrast to make an image clearer. Decrease the contrast to make an image more subdued.	
Stack/Sort	Select to stack or sort multiple copies. Stack  Sort 	

Menu selections	Options
Page Layout	<p>Make N in 1 copies.</p> <p>4 in 1</p> 

DCP-B7658DW

To change Copy settings, press [Options].

Menu selections	Options	
Quality	Select the copy quality for your type of document.	
Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-
	Enlarge	Select an enlargement ratio for the next copy.
	Reduce	Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.
	Auto	Adjusts the copy size to fit the paper size you have set.
	Custom (25-400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.
Density	<p>Increase the density to make the text darker.</p> <p>Decrease the density to make the text lighter.</p>	
2-sided Copy	<p>Select to copy on both sides of the paper.</p> <p>1-sided → 2-sided</p>  <p>2-sided → 2-sided</p>  <p>The available options will vary depending on your model.</p>	
2-sided Copy Page Layout (available only for certain settings)	Select long edge or short edge.	
Contrast	<p>Increase the contrast to make an image clearer.</p> <p>Decrease the contrast to make an image more subdued.</p>	

Menu selections	Options
<p>Stack/Sort</p>	<p>Select to stack or sort multiple copies.</p> <p>Stack</p>  <p>Sort</p> 
<p>Page Layout</p>	<p>Make N in 1 copies.</p> <p>4 in 1</p> 

 **Related Information**

- [Copy](#)

Network

- [Supported Basic Network Features](#)
- [Configure Network Settings](#)
- [Wireless Network Settings](#)
- [Network Features](#)

Supported Basic Network Features

The machine supports various features depending on the operating system. Use this table to see which network features and connections are supported by each operating system.

Operating Systems	Windows	Windows Server	macOS
Printing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scanning	Yes		Yes
Web Based Management ¹	Yes	Yes	Yes
Status Monitor	Yes		
Driver Deployment Wizard	Yes	Yes	

¹ The default password to manage your machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". We recommend immediately changing the default password to protect your machine from unauthorised access.



- When connecting your machine to an outside network such as the Internet, make sure your network environment is protected by a separate firewall or other means in order to prevent information leaks due to inadequate settings or unauthorised access by malicious third parties.
- When your machine is connected to the global network, a warning appears. When you see this warning, we strongly recommend confirming your network settings, and then re-connecting to a secure network.
- Enabling your machine's global network communication filtering feature blocks access from the global network. The global network communication filtering feature may prevent the machine from receiving certain print or scan jobs from a computer or mobile device that uses a global IP address.



Related Information

- [Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Change the Login Password Using Web Based Management](#)

Configure Network Settings

- [Configure Network Details Using the Control Panel](#)
- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Configure Network Details Using the Control Panel

To configure the machine for your network, use the control panel's [Network] menu selections.




- For information about the network settings you can configure using the control panel, see *Related Information: Settings Tables*.
- You can also use Web Based Management, to configure and change your machine's network settings.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the network option you want, and then press **OK**. Repeat this step until you access the menu you want to configure, and then follow the LCD instructions.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the network option you want, and then press it. Repeat this step until you access the menu you want to configure, and then follow the LCD instructions.

Related Information

- [Configure Network Settings](#)

Related Topics:

- [Settings Tables \(2 Line LCD DCP models\)](#)
- [Settings Tables \(2.7" Touch Panel DCP models\)](#)
- [Supported Basic Network Features](#)

Wireless Network Settings

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

- [Use the Wireless Network](#)
- [Use Wi-Fi Direct[®]](#)
- [Enable/Disable Wireless LAN](#)
- [Print the WLAN Report](#)

Use the Wireless Network

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

- [Before Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Setup Wizard from Your Computer](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network](#)

Before Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

Before attempting to configure a wireless network, confirm the following:

- If you are using an enterprise wireless network, you must know the User ID and Password.
- To achieve optimum results with normal everyday document printing, place your machine as close to the wireless LAN access point/router as possible with minimal obstructions. Large objects and walls between the two devices and interference from other electronic devices can affect the data transfer speed of your documents.

Due to these factors, wireless may not be the best method of connection for all types of documents and applications. If you are printing large files, such as multi-page documents with mixed text and large graphics, you may want to consider selecting wired Ethernet for faster data transfer (supported models only), or USB for the fastest throughput speed.

- Although your machine can be used in a wired and wireless network (supported models only), only one connection method can be used at a time. However, a wireless network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection, or a wired network connection (supported models only) and Wi-Fi Direct connection can be used at the same time.
- If there is a signal in the vicinity, wireless LAN allows you to freely make a LAN connection. However, if security settings are not correctly configured, the signal may be intercepted by malicious third-parties, possibly resulting in:
 - Theft of personal or confidential information
 - Improper transmission of information to parties impersonating the specified individuals
 - Dissemination of transcribed communication contents that were intercepted



Make sure you know your wireless router/access point's Network Name (SSID) and Network Key (Password). If you cannot find this information, consult the manufacturer of your wireless router/access point, your system administrator, or Internet provider. Brother cannot provide this information.



Related Information

- [Use the Wireless Network](#)

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Setup Wizard from Your Computer

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

1. Download the installer from your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.
2. Start the installer, and then follow the on-screen instructions.
3. Select **Wireless Network Connection (Wi-Fi)**, and then click **Next**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.

You have completed the wireless network setup.



Related Information

- [Use the Wireless Network](#)

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings of the computer to which you are connecting.

Network Name (SSID)

Network Key

For example:

Network Name (SSID)
HELLO

Network Key
12345



- Your access point/router may support the use of multiple WEP keys, but your Brother machine supports the use of only the first WEP key.
- If you need assistance during setup and want to contact Brother customer service, make sure you have your SSID (Network Name) and Network Key (Password) ready. We cannot assist you in locating this information.
- If you do not know this information (SSID and Network Key), you cannot continue the wireless setup.

How can I find this information?

- Check the documentation provided with your wireless access point/router.
- The initial SSID could be the manufacturer's name or the model name.
- If you do not know the security information, consult the router manufacturer, your system administrator, or your Internet provider.

2. Press **功能**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Find Network] option, and then press **OK**.
6. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, select On.

This will start the wireless setup wizard.

7. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. When a list of SSIDs appears, press ▲ or ▼ to select the SSID you want.
8. Press **OK**.
9. Do one of the following:
 - If you are using an authentication and encryption method that requires a Network Key, enter the Network Key you wrote down in the first step.
When you have entered all the characters, press **OK**.
To apply the settings, select [Yes].
 - If your authentication method is Open System and your encryption mode is None, go to the next step.
10. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.

DCP-B7658DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings of the computer to which you are connecting.

Network Name (SSID)

Network Key

For example:

Network Name (SSID)
HELLO


Network Key
12345



- Your access point/router may support the use of multiple WEP keys, but your Brother machine supports the use of only the first WEP key.
- If you need assistance during setup and want to contact Brother customer service, make sure you have your SSID (Network Name) and Network Key (Password) ready. We cannot assist you in locating this information.
- If you do not know this information (SSID and Network Key), you cannot continue the wireless setup.

How can I find this information?

- Check the documentation provided with your wireless access point/router.
- The initial SSID could be the manufacturer's name or the model name.
- If you do not know the security information, consult the router manufacturer, your system administrator, or your Internet provider.

2. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] > [Find Wi-Fi Network].
3. When [Switch Network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].

-
4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs.
If a list of SSIDs is displayed, press ▲ or ▼ to display the SSID to which you want to connect, and then press the SSID.
 5. Press [OK].
 6. Do one of the following:
 - If you are using an authentication and encryption method that requires a Network Key, enter the Network Key you wrote down in the first step.
When you have entered all the characters, press [OK].
 - If your authentication method is Open System and your encryption mode is None, go to the next step.
 7. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.



Related Information

- [Use the Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
 - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

If your wireless access point/router supports WPS (PBC: Push Button Configuration), you can use WPS from your machine's control panel menu to configure your wireless network settings.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)


DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WPS/PushButton] option, and then press **OK**.
5. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, select On.
This will start the wireless setup wizard.
6. When the LCD displays [Press Key on rtr], press the WPS button on your wireless access point/router. Then follow the LCD instructions on your machine. Your machine will automatically detect your wireless access point/router and try to connect to your wireless network.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] > [WPS/Push Button].
2. When [Switch Network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
3. When the touchscreen displays [Start WPS on your wireless access point/router, then press [OK].], press the WPS button on your wireless access point/router. Then press [OK] on your machine. Your machine will automatically detect your wireless access point/router and try to connect to your wireless network.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.

Related Information

- [Use the Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

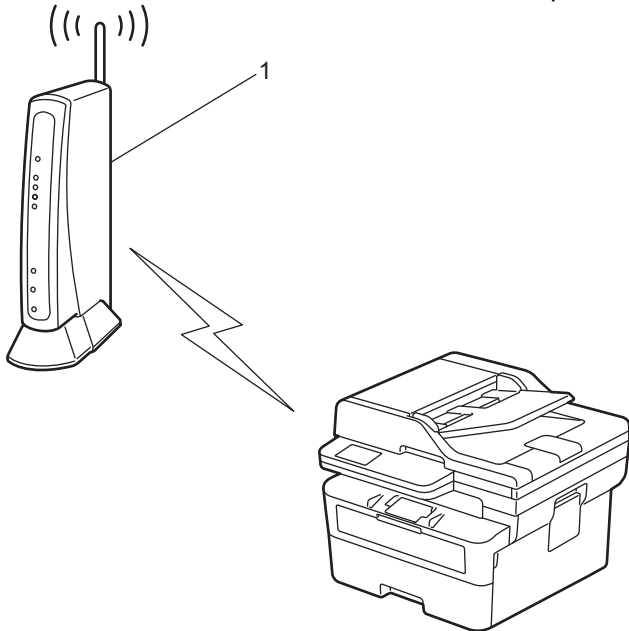
Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

If your wireless LAN access point/router supports WPS, you can use the Personal Identification Number (PIN) Method to configure your wireless network settings.

The PIN Method is one of the connection methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance®. By submitting a PIN created by an Enrollee (your machine) to the Registrar (a device that manages the wireless LAN), you can set up the wireless network and security settings. For more information on how to access WPS mode, see the instructions provided with your wireless access point/router.

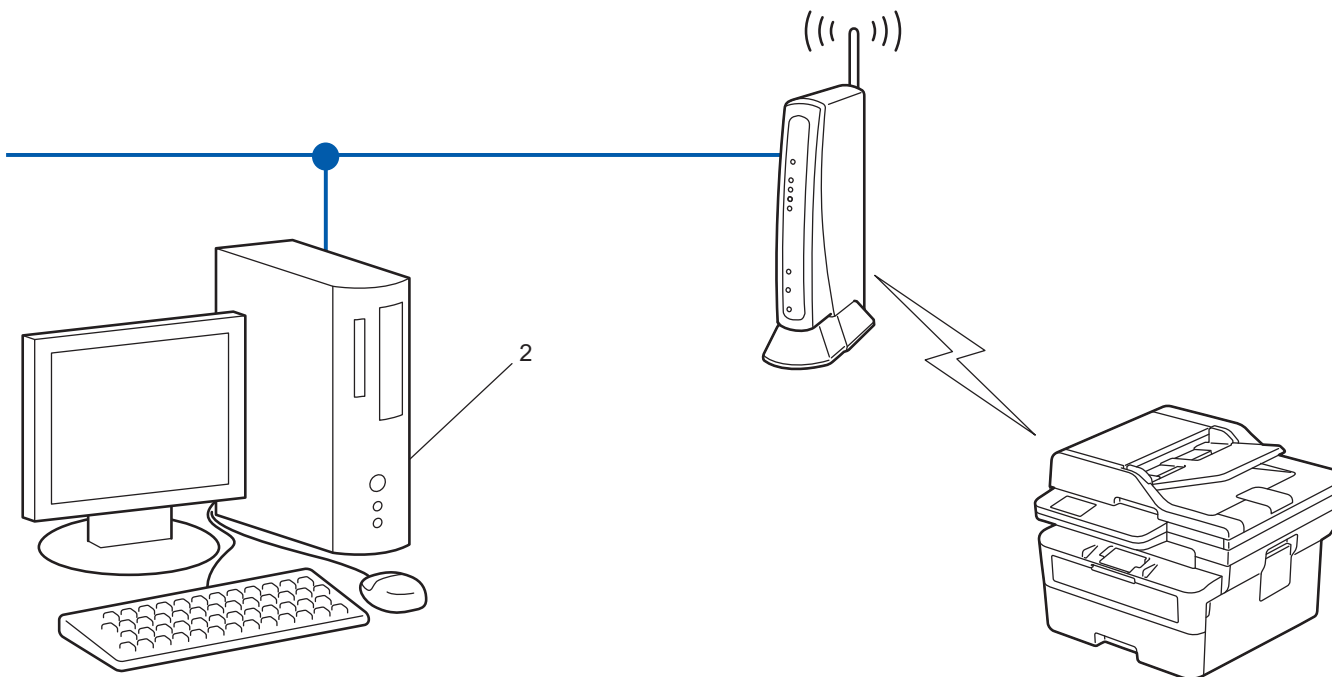
Type A

Connection when the wireless LAN access point/router (1) doubles as the Registrar:



Type B

Connection when another device (2), such as a computer, is used as the Registrar:



>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW
 >> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WPS/PIN Code] option, and then press **OK**.
5. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, select On.
 This will start the wireless setup wizard.
6. The LCD displays an eight-digit PIN and the machine starts searching for a wireless LAN access point/router.
7. Using a computer connected to the network, in your browser's address bar, type the IP address of the device you are using as the Registrar (for example: <http://192.168.1.2>).
8. Go to the WPS settings page and type the PIN, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

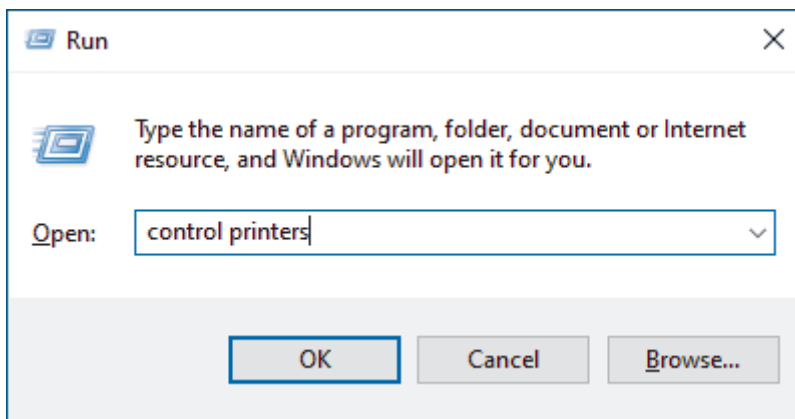


- The Registrar is usually the wireless LAN access point/router.
- The settings page may differ depending on the brand of wireless LAN access point/router. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.

If you are using a Windows 10 or Windows 11 computer as a Registrar, complete the following steps:

9. Hold down the  key and press the  key on the computer's keyboard to launch **Run**.

10. Type "control printers" in the **Open:** field and click **OK**.



The **Devices and Printers** window appears.



If the **Devices and Printers** window does not appear, click **View more devices > More devices and printer settings**.

11. Click **Add a device**.



- To use a Windows 10 or Windows 11 computer as a Registrar, you must register it to your network in advance. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.
- If you use Windows 10 or Windows 11 as a Registrar, you can install the printer driver after the wireless configuration by following the on-screen instructions. To install the driver and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.

12. Select your machine and click **Next**.


13. Type the PIN displayed on the machine's LCD, and then click **Next**.

14. Click **Close**.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] > [WPS/PIN Code].
2. When [Switch Network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
3. The LCD displays an eight-digit PIN and the machine starts searching for a wireless LAN access point/router.
4. Using a computer connected to the network, in your browser's address bar, type the IP address of the device you are using as the Registrar (for example: http://192.168.1.2).
5. Go to the WPS settings page and type the PIN, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

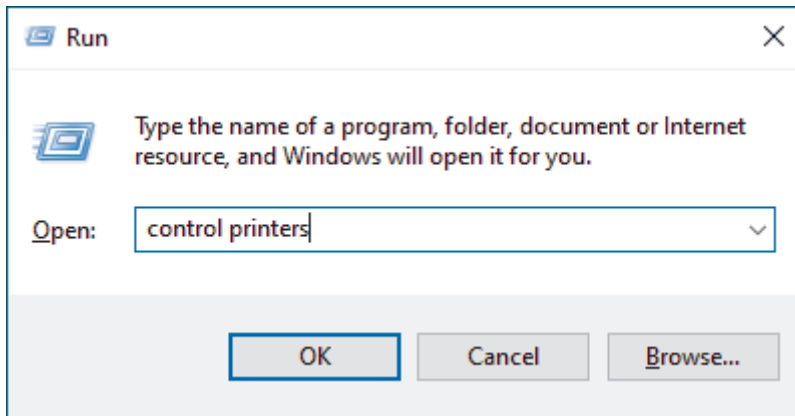


- The Registrar is usually the wireless LAN access point/router.
- The settings page may differ depending on the brand of wireless LAN access point/router. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.

If you are using a Windows 10 or Windows 11 computer as a Registrar, complete the following steps:

6. Hold down the  key and press the  key on the computer's keyboard to launch **Run**.

-
7. Type "**control printers**" in the **Open:** field and click **OK**.



The **Devices and Printers** window appears.



If the **Devices and Printers** window does not appear, click **View more devices > More devices and printer settings**.

8. Click **Add a device**.



- To use a Windows 10 or Windows 11 computer as a Registrar, you must register it to your network in advance. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.
 - If you use Windows 10 or Windows 11 as a Registrar, you can install the printer driver after the wireless configuration by following the on-screen instructions. To install the driver and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.
-

9. Select your machine and click **Next**.

10. Type the PIN displayed on the machine's LCD, and then click **Next**.

11. Click **Close**.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.



Related Information

- [Use the Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW](#)

>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and write down the current wireless network settings.

Network Name (SSID)		
Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Open System	NONE	-
	WEP	
Shared Key	WEP	
WPA/WPA2-PSK	AES	
	TKIP	
WPA3-SAE	AES	

For example:

Network Name (SSID)		
HELLO		
Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
WPA2-PSK	AES	12345678



If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your Brother machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press **功能**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Find Network] option, and then press **OK**.
6. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, select On.
This will start the wireless setup wizard.
7. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [<New SSID>] option, and then press **OK**.
8. Enter the SSID name, and then press **OK**.
9. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the Authentication Method you want, and then press **OK**.

10. Do one of the following:

- If you selected the [Open System] option, press ▲ or ▼ to select the Encryption Type [None] or [WEP], and then press **OK**.
If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption Type, enter the WEP key, and then press **OK**.
- If you selected the [Shared Key] option, enter the WEP key, and then press **OK**.
- If you selected the [WPA-Personal] option, press ▲ or ▼ to select the Encryption Type [TKIP+AES] or [AES], and then press **OK**.
Enter the WPA™ key, and then press **OK**.
- If you selected the [WPA3-SAE] option, select the Encryption Type [AES], and then press **OK**.
Enter the WPA™ key, and then press **OK**.



Your Brother machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

11. To apply the settings, select [Yes]. To cancel, select [No].

12. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.

DCP-B7658DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and write down the current wireless network settings.


Network Name (SSID)		
Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Open System	NONE	-
	WEP	
Shared Key	WEP	
WPA/WPA2-PSK	AES	
	TKIP	
WPA3-SAE	AES	

For example:

Network Name (SSID)		
HELLO		
Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
WPA2-PSK	AES	12345678



If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your Brother machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] > [Find Wi-Fi Network].
3. When [Switch Network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].

This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].

4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press ▲ or ▼ to display [<New SSID>]. Press [<New SSID>], and then press [OK].
5. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].
6. Select the Authentication Method.
7. Do one of the following:
 - If you selected the [Open System] option, press [None] or [WEP].
If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption type, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].
 - If you selected the [Shared Key] option, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].
 - If you selected the [WPA/WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE] option, press [TKIP+AES] or [AES].
Enter the WPA™ key, and then press [OK].
 - If you selected the [WPA3-SAE] option, press [AES].
Enter the WPA™ key, and then press [OK].



Your Brother machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

8. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers and software necessary to use your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.



Related Information

- [Use the Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration](#)
 - [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
 - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW](#)
 >> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

Network Name (SSID)

Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
EAP-FAST/NONE	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-FAST/GTC	AES		
	TKIP		
PEAP/MS-CHAPv2	AES		
	TKIP		
PEAP/GTC	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TTLS/CHAP	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TTLS/PAP	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TLS	AES		-
	TKIP		-

For example:

Network Name (SSID)
HELLO

Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2	AES	Brother	12345678



- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- If you verify your machine using the common name of the server certificate, we recommend writing down the common name before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the common name of the server certificate.

2. Press **功能**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the following:
 - a. Select [Network]. Press **OK**.
 - b. Select [WLAN (Wi-Fi)]. Press **OK**.
 - c. Select [Find Network]. Press **OK**.
4. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, select On.
This will start the wireless setup wizard.
5. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [<New SSID>] option, and then press **OK**.
6. Enter the SSID name, and then press **OK**.
7. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the Authentication Method you want, and then press **OK**.
8. Do one of the following:
 - If you selected the [EAP-FAST], [PEAP] or [EAP-TTLS] option, press **▲** or **▼** to select the Inner Authentication Method [NONE], [CHAP], [MS-CHAP], [MS-CHAPv2], [GTC] or [PAP], and then press **OK**.



Depending on your Authentication Method, the Inner Authentication Method selections differ.

Press **▲** or **▼** to select the Encryption Type [TKIP+AES] or [AES], and then press **OK**.

Press **▲** or **▼** to select the Verification Method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA+Server ID], and then press **OK**.

- If you selected the [CA+Server ID] option, enter the server ID, user ID and password (if required), and then press **OK** for each option.
- For other selections, enter the user ID and the Password (if required), and then press **OK** for each option.



If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine will display the message [No Verification].

- If you selected the [EAP-TLS] option, press **▲** or **▼** to select the Encryption Type [TKIP+AES] or [AES], and then press **OK**.
When the machine displays a list of available Client Certificates, select the certificate you want, and then press **OK**.
Press **▲** or **▼** to select the Verification Method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA+Server ID], and then press **OK**.
 - If you selected the [CA+Server ID] option, enter the server ID and user ID, and then press **OK** for each option.
 - For other selections, enter the user ID, and then press **OK**.
9. To apply the settings, select [Yes]. To cancel, select [No].
 10. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers or the application necessary for operating your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.

DCP-B7658DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

Network Name (SSID)

Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
EAP-FAST/NONE	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-FAST/GTC	AES		
	TKIP		
PEAP/MS-CHAPv2	AES		
	TKIP		
PEAP/GTC	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TTLS/CHAP	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TTLS/PAP	AES		
	TKIP		
EAP-TLS	AES		-
	TKIP		-


For example:

Network Name (SSID)
HELLO

Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2	AES	Brother	12345678



- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- If you verify your machine using the common name of the server certificate, we recommend writing down the common name before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the common name of the server certificate.

-
2. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] > [Find Wi-Fi Network].
 3. When [Switch Network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
 4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press ▲ or ▼ to display [<New SSID>]. Press [<New SSID>], and then press [OK].
 5. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].
 6. Select the Authentication Method.
 7. Do one of the following:
 - If you selected the [EAP-FAST], [PEAP] or [EAP-TTLS] option, select the Inner Authentication method [None], [CHAP], [MS-CHAP], [MS-CHAPv2], [GTC] or [PAP].



Depending on your Authentication method, the Inner Authentication method selections may differ.

Select the encryption type [TKIP+AES] or [AES].

Select the verification method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA + Server ID].

- If you selected the [CA + Server ID] option, enter the server ID, user ID, and password (if required), and then press [OK] for each option.
- For other selections, enter the user ID and Password (if required), and then press [OK] for each option.



If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine displays [No Verification].

- If you selected the [EAP-TLS] option, select the encryption type [TKIP+AES] or [AES].
The machine will display a list of available Client Certificates, and then select the certificate.
Select the verification method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA + Server ID].
 - If you selected the [CA + Server ID] option, enter the server ID and user ID, and then press [OK] for each option.
 - For other selections, enter the user ID, and then press [OK].

8. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install the drivers or the application necessary for operating your machine, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.



Related Information

- [Use the Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

Use Wi-Fi Direct®

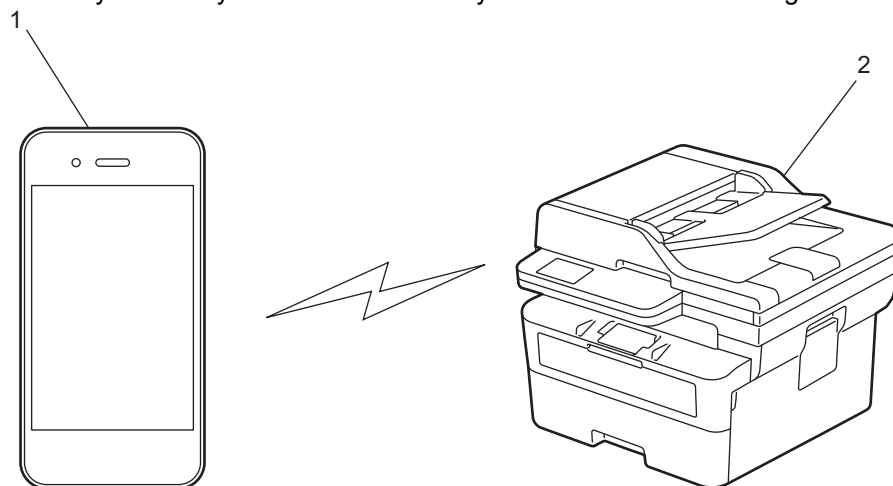
Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/
DCP-B7658DW

- [Wi-Fi Direct Overview](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually](#)
- [Configure Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the Push Button Method](#)

Wi-Fi Direct Overview

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

Wi-Fi Direct is one of the wireless configuration methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance®. It allows you to securely connect your mobile device to your machine without using a wireless router/access point.



1. Mobile device
2. Your machine



- You can use Wi-Fi Direct with the wired or wireless network connection at the same time.
- The Wi-Fi Direct-supported device can become a Group Owner. When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, the Group Owner serves as an access point.



Related Information

- [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)

Related Topics:

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually](#)
- [Configure Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the Push Button Method](#)

Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW

If your mobile device does not support Wi-Fi Direct or WPS, you must configure a Wi-Fi Direct network manually.



When the machine receives a Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Connect?] appears on the LCD. Select OK to connect.


1. Press **功能**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Wi-Fi Direct] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Manual] option, and then press **OK**.
5. When [Wi-Fi Direct On?] appears, select On.
6. The machine will display the SSID name and Password. Go to your mobile device's wireless network settings screen, select the SSID name, and then enter the password.
7. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

DCP-B7658DW

If your mobile device does not support Wi-Fi Direct or WPS, you must configure a Wi-Fi Direct network manually.



When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received.Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Manual].
2. The machine will display the SSID name and Password for two minutes. Go to your mobile device's wireless network settings screen, select the SSID name, and then enter the password.
3. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

✓ Related Information

- [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Overview](#)
- [Configure Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the Push Button Method](#)

Configure Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the Push Button Method

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW

If your mobile device supports Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:



1. Press **功能**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Wi-Fi Direct] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Push Button] option, and then press **OK**.
5. When [Wi-Fi Direct On?] appears, select On.
6. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions) when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device and press OK.] appears on the machine's LCD. Press **OK** on your machine.
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.
7. Do one of the following:
 - If your mobile device displays a list of machines with Wi-Fi Direct enabled, select your Brother machine.
 - If your Brother machine displays a list of mobile devices with Wi-Fi Direct enabled, select your mobile device. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the mobile device you want to connect to and press **OK**. To search for available devices again, select [<Rescan>], and then press **OK**.
8. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

DCP-B7658DW

If your mobile device supports Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:



When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Push Button].
2. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions) when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD. Press [OK] on your machine.
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .
3. Do one of the following:
 - If your mobile device displays a list of machines with Wi-Fi Direct enabled, select your Brother machine.
 - If your Brother machine displays a list of mobile devices with Wi-Fi Direct enabled, select your mobile device. Select the mobile device you want to connect to. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan].
4. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



Related Information

- [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Overview](#)
 - [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually](#)
-

Enable/Disable Wireless LAN



Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN (Wi-Fi)] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN Enable] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Do one of the following:
 - To enable Wi-Fi, select [On].
 - To disable Wi-Fi, select [Off].
6. Press **OK**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN (Wi-Fi)].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN Enable] option. Press [WLAN Enable].
3. Do one of the following:
 - To enable Wi-Fi, select [On].
 - To disable Wi-Fi, select [Off].
4. Press .

Related Information

- [Wireless Network Settings](#)

Print the WLAN Report

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

The WLAN Report shows your machine's wireless status. If the wireless connection fails, check the error code on the printed report.


>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Print Reports] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN Report] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press 启动.

The machine will print the WLAN Report.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [WLAN Report].
2. Press [Yes].

The machine will print the WLAN Report.

If the WLAN Report does not print, check your machine for errors. If there are no visible errors, wait for one minute and then try to print the report again.

Related Information

- [Wireless Network Settings](#)
 - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

Related Topics:

- [My Machine Cannot Print or Scan over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

Wireless LAN Report Error Codes

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

If the Wireless LAN Report shows that the connection failed, check the error code on the printed report and see the corresponding instructions in the table:

Error Code	Problem and Recommended Solutions
TS-01	<p>The WLAN (Wi-Fi) is not enabled.</p> <p>Check the following points and try to set up your wireless connection again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enable the WLAN setting on your machine.• If a network cable is connected to your machine, disconnect it.
TS-02	<p>The wireless router/access point cannot be detected.</p> <p>Check the following points and try to set up your wireless connection again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Make sure the wireless router/access point is on.• Temporarily place your machine closer to the wireless router/access point when you are configuring the wireless settings.• If your wireless router/access point is using MAC address filtering, confirm that the MAC address of the machine is allowed in the filter. You can find the MAC address by printing the Network Configuration Report.• If you manually entered the Network Name (SSID) and security information (authentication method/encryption method), the information may be incorrect. Check the Network Name and security information again and re-enter the correct information.• Restart your wireless router/access point. If you cannot find the Network Name (SSID) and security information, see the documentation provided with your wireless router/access point, or contact the router manufacturer, your system administrator, or Internet service provider.
TS-03	<p>The wireless enterprise network and security settings you entered may be incorrect.</p> <p>Check the following points and try to set up your wireless connection again:</p> <p>Verify the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Network Name (SSID) you selected to configure your machine.- Security information you selected to configure your machine (such as the authentication method, encryption method, or User ID). <p>If you still cannot find the Network Name (SSID) and security information, see the documentation provided with your wireless router/access point, or contact the router manufacturer, your system administrator, or Internet service provider.</p>

Error Code	Problem and Recommended Solutions
TS-04	<p>Your machine does not support the authentication and encryption methods used by the selected wireless router/access point.</p> <p>For infrastructure mode (Most common)</p> <p>Change the authentication and encryption methods of the wireless router/access point. Your machine supports the following authentication and encryption methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WPA-Personal: TKIP / AES • WPA2-Personal: TKIP / AES • WPA3-Personal: AES • OPEN: WEP / NONE (without encryption) • Shared key: WEP <p>If your issue is not solved, the Network Name (SSID) or security settings you entered may be incorrect. Check that all wireless network settings are correct for your network.</p>
TS-05	<p>The Network Name (SSID) and Network Key (Password) are incorrect.</p> <p>Check the following points and try to set up your wireless connection again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confirm the Network Name (SSID) and Network Key (Password). • If your Network Key contains upper-case and lower-case letters, make sure you type them correctly. • If you cannot find the Network Name (SSID) and security information, see the documentation provided with your wireless router/access point, or contact the router manufacturer, your system administrator, or Internet service provider. • If your wireless router/access point uses WEP encryption with multiple WEP keys, write down and use only the first WEP key.
TS-06	<p>The wireless security information (authentication method/encryption method/Network Key (Password)) is incorrect.</p> <p>Check the following points and try to set up your wireless connection again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confirm the Network Key. If your Network Key contains upper-case and lower-case letters, make sure you type them correctly. • Confirm whether the authentication method entered and the authentication method or encryption method supported by the wireless router/access point are the same. • If the network key, authentication method, and encryption method have been confirmed, restart your wireless router/access point and the machine. • If your wireless router/access point's Stealth Mode is on, you may need to disable it to connect to the wireless network. <p>If you cannot find the Network Name (SSID) and security information, see the documentation provided with your wireless router/access point, or contact the router manufacturer, your system administrator, or Internet service provider.</p>
TS-07	<p>The machine cannot detect a wireless router/access point that has WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) enabled.</p> <p>Check the following points and try again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To check if your wireless router/access point supports WPS, look for the WPS symbol displayed on the router/access point. For more information, see the documentation provided with your wireless router/access point. • To set up your wireless connection using WPS, you must configure both your machine and the wireless router/access point. For more information, see the user's guide. • If you do not know how to set up your wireless router/access point using WPS, see the documentation provided with your wireless router/access point, or contact the router manufacturer, your system administrator, or Internet service provider.

Error Code	Problem and Recommended Solutions
TS-08	<p>Two or more wireless routers or access points that have WPS enabled are detected.</p> <p>Check the following points and try again:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure that only one wireless router/access point within range has WPS enabled, and then try to connect again. • Try to connect again after a few minutes to avoid interference from other access points/routers.



How to confirm wireless security information (SSID/authentication method/encryption method/Network Key) of your WLAN access point/router:

1. The default security settings may be provided on a label attached to the WLAN access point/router. Or the manufacturer's name or model number of the WLAN access point/router may be used as the default security settings.
2. See the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router for information on how to find the security settings.
 - If the WLAN access point/router is set to not broadcast the SSID, the SSID will not automatically be detected. You will have to manually enter the SSID name.
 - The Network Key may also be described as the Password, Security Key, or Encryption Key.

If you do not know the SSID and wireless security settings of your WLAN access point/router or how to change the configuration, see the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router, ask the manufacturer of your access point/router or ask your Internet provider or network administrator.



Related Information

- [Print the WLAN Report](#)

Related Topics:

- [My Machine Cannot Print or Scan over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network](#)

Network Features

- [Enable/Disable Web Based Management Using the Control Panel](#)
- [Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Synchronise Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings](#)

Enable/Disable Web Based Management Using the Control Panel

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW


DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Web Based Mgmt] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the option you want, and then press **OK**.



If you enable this function, make sure you specify the connection method to use Web Based Management.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Web Based Mgmt].
2. Press to select the option you want.



If you enable this function, make sure you specify the connection method to use Web Based Management.



Related Information

- [Network Features](#)

Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using Web Based Management

If your network uses a proxy server, the following proxy server information must be configured using Web Based Management:

- Proxy server address
- Port number
- User Name
- Password



- We recommend using the latest version of the following web browsers:
 - Microsoft Edge, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Windows
 - Safari, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Mac
 - Google Chrome™ for Android™
 - Safari and Google Chrome™ for iOS
- Ensure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled, regardless of which browser you use.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Network > Protocol**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Make sure the **Proxy** checkbox is selected, and then click **Submit**.
6. In the **Proxy** field, click **Advanced Setting**.
7. Enter the proxy server information.
8. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Network Features](#)

Related Topics:

- [WeChat Print](#)

Print the Network Configuration Report

The Network Configuration Report lists the network configuration, including the network print server settings.




- The Node Name appears on the Network Configuration Report. The default Node Name is "BRN123456abcdef" for a wired network or "BRW123456abcdef" for a wireless network (where "123456abcdef" is your machine's MAC Address / Ethernet Address.)
- If the IP Address on the Network Configuration Report shows 0.0.0.0, wait for one minute and try printing it again.
- You can find your machine's settings, such as the IP address, subnet mask, node name, and MAC Address on the report, for example:
 - IP address: 192.168.0.5
 - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
 - Node name: BRN000ca0000499
 - MAC Address: 00-0c-a0-00-04-99

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Print Reports] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network Config] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press 启动.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [Network Configuration].
2. Press [Yes].

The machine prints the Network Configuration Report.

✓ Related Information

- [Network Features](#)

Related Topics:

- [Check Your Machine's Network Settings](#)
- [Use the Network Connection Repair Tool \(Windows\)](#)
- [Error Messages](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)
- [Access Web Based Management](#)

Synchronise Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

The Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) is used to synchronise the time used by the machine for authentication with the SNTP time server. You can automatically or manually synchronise the machine's time with the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) provided by the SNTP time server.

- [Configure Date and Time Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management](#)

Configure Date and Time Using Web Based Management

Configure the date and time to synchronise the time used by the machine with the SNTP time server.

This feature is not available in some countries.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Administrator > Date&Time**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Verify the **Time Zone** settings.



Select the time difference between your location and UTC from the **Time Zone** drop-down list. For example, the time zone for Eastern Time in the USA and Canada is UTC-05:00.

6. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Synchronise Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)

Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management

Configure the SNTP protocol to synchronise the time the machine uses for authentication with the time kept by the SNTP time server.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Network > Protocol**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Select the **SNTP** checkbox to activate the settings.
6. Click **Submit**.
7. Restart your Brother machine to activate the configuration.
8. Next to the SNTP checkbox, click **Advanced Setting**.
9. Configure the settings.

Option	Description
Status	Displays whether the SNTP protocol is enabled or disabled.
Synchronization Status	Confirm the latest synchronisation status.
SNTP Server Method	Select AUTO or STATIC . <ul style="list-style-type: none">• AUTO If you have a DHCP server on your network, the SNTP server will obtain the address from that server automatically.• STATIC Type the address you want to use.
Primary SNTP Server Address Secondary SNTP Server Address	Type the server's address (up to 64 characters). The secondary SNTP server's address is used as a backup to the primary SNTP server's address. If the primary server is unavailable, the machine will contact the secondary SNTP server.
Primary SNTP Server Port Secondary SNTP Server Port	Type the port number (1-65535). The secondary SNTP server port is used as a backup to the primary SNTP server port. If the primary port is unavailable, the machine will contact the secondary SNTP port.
Synchronization Interval	Type the number of hours between server synchronisation attempts (1-168 hours).

10. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Synchronise Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)

Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings

Use your machine's control panel to reset the machine's network settings to its default factory settings. This resets all information except the administrator password.



You can also reset the print server to its factory settings using Web Based Management.


>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Network Reset] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Follow the machine's instruction to reset the network settings.

The machine will restart.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Network Reset].
2. [Machine will reboot after resetting. Press [OK] for 2 seconds to confirm.] will be displayed. Press [OK] for two seconds to confirm.

The machine will restart.

✓ Related Information

- [Network Features](#)

Related Topics:

- [Reset Your Machine](#)

Security

- [Before Using Network Security Features](#)
- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)
- [Use SSL/TLS](#)
- [Use SNMPv3](#)
- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication](#)
- [Use Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Send an Email Securely](#)
- [Store Print Log to Network](#)
- [Lock the Machine Settings from the Control Panel](#)
- [Use Global Network Detection Features](#)

Before Using Network Security Features

Your machine employs some of the latest network security and encryption protocols available today. These network features can be integrated into your overall network security plan to help protect your data and prevent unauthorised access to the machine.



We recommend disabling the FTP server and TFTP protocols. Accessing the machine using these protocols is not secure. However, note that if you disable FTP server, the Scan to FTP feature will be disabled.



Related Information

- [Security](#)
 - [Disable Unnecessary Protocols](#)
-

Disable Unnecessary Protocols

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "**Pwd**". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Network > Protocol**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Clear any unnecessary protocol check boxes to disable them.
6. Click **Submit**.
7. Restart your Brother machine to activate the configuration.



Related Information

- [Before Using Network Security Features](#)

Configure Certificates for Device Security

You must configure a certificate to manage your networked machine securely using SSL/TLS. You must use Web Based Management to configure a certificate.

- [Supported Security Certificate Features](#)
- [How to Create and Install a Certificate](#)
- [Create a Self-signed Certificate](#)
- [Create a Certificate Signing Request \(CSR\) and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)
- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)
- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)
- [Manage Multiple Certificates](#)

Supported Security Certificate Features

Your machine supports the use of multiple security certificates, which allows secure management, authentication, and communication with the machine. The following security certificate features can be used with the machine:

- SSL/TLS communication
- SSL communication for SMTP
- IEEE 802.1x authentication

Your machine supports the following:

- Pre-installed certificate

Your machine has a pre-installed self-signed certificate. This certificate enables you to use SSL/TLS communication without creating or installing a different certificate.



The pre-installed self-signed certificate protects your communication up to a certain level. We recommend using a certificate that is issued by a trusted organisation for better security.

- Self-signed certificate

This print server issues its own certificate. Using this certificate, you can easily use the SSL/TLS communication without creating or installing a different certificate from a CA.

- Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

There are two methods for installing a certificate from a CA. If you already have a certificate from a CA or if you want to use a certificate from an external trusted CA:

- When using a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) from this print server.
- When importing a certificate and a private key.

- Certificate Authority (CA) Certificate

To use a CA certificate that identifies the CA and owns its private key, you must import that CA certificate from the CA before configuring the security features of the Network.



-
- If you are going to use SSL/TLS communication, we recommend contacting your system administrator first.
 - When you reset the print server back to its default factory settings, the certificate and the private key that are installed will be deleted. If you want to keep the same certificate and the private key after resetting the print server, export them before resetting, and then reinstall them.
-



Related Information

- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)
-

How to Create and Install a Certificate

There are two options when choosing a security certificate: use a self-signed certificate or use a certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA).

Option 1

Self-Signed Certificate

1. Create a self-signed certificate using Web Based Management.
2. Install the self-signed certificate on your computer.

Option 2

Certificate from a CA

1. Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) using Web Based Management.
2. Install the certificate issued by the CA on your Brother machine using Web Based Management.
3. Install the certificate on your computer.



Related Information

- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)

Create a Self-signed Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Security > Certificate**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Click **Create Self-Signed Certificate**.
6. Enter a **Common Name** and a **Valid Date**.
 - The length of the **Common Name** is less than 64 bytes. Enter an identifier, such as an IP address, node name, or domain name to use when accessing this machine through SSL/TLS communication. The node name is displayed by default.
 - A warning will appear if you use the IPPS or HTTPS protocol and enter a different name in the URL than the **Common Name** that was used for the self-signed certificate.
7. Select your setting from the **Public Key Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **EC(256bit)**.
8. Select your setting from the **Digest Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **SHA256**.
9. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)

Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

If you already have a certificate from an external trusted Certificate Authority (CA) , you can store the certificate and private key on the machine and manage them by importing and exporting. If you do not have a certificate from an external trusted CA, create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR), send it to a CA for authentication, and install the returned certificate on your machine.

- [Create a Certificate Signing Request \(CSR\)](#)
- [Install a Certificate on Your Machine](#)

Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

A Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is a request sent to a Certificate Authority (CA) to authenticate the credentials contained within the certificate.

We recommend installing a Root Certificate from the CA on your computer before creating the CSR.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Security > Certificate**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Click **Create CSR**.
6. Type a **Common Name** (required) and add other information about your **Organization** (optional).



- Your company details are required so that a CA can confirm your identity and verify it to the outside world.
- The length of the **Common Name** must be less than 64 bytes. Enter an identifier, such as an IP address, node name, or domain name to use when accessing this machine through SSL/TLS communication. The node name is displayed by default. The **Common Name** is required.
- A warning will appear if you type a different name in the URL than the Common Name that was used for the certificate.
- The length of the **Organization**, the **Organization Unit**, the **City/Locality**, and the **State/Province** must be less than 64 bytes.
- The **Country/Region** should be a two-character ISO 3166 country code.
- If you are configuring an X.509v3 certificate extension, select the **Configure extended partition** checkbox, and then select **Auto (Register IPv4)** or **Manual**.

7. Select your setting from the **Public Key Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **EC(256bit)**.
8. Select your setting from the **Digest Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **SHA256**.
9. Click **Submit**.

The CSR appears on your screen. Save the CSR as a file or copy and paste it into an online CSR form offered by a Certificate Authority.

10. Click **Save**.



- Follow your CA's policy regarding the method to send a CSR to your CA.
 - If you are using the Enterprise root CA of Windows Server 2012/2012 R2/2016/2019/2022, we recommend using the Web Server for the certificate template to securely create the Client Certificate. If you are creating a Client Certificate for an IEEE 802.1x environment with EAP-TLS authentication, we recommend using User for the certificate template.
-



Related Information

- [Create a Certificate Signing Request \(CSR\) and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)
-

Install a Certificate on Your Machine

When you receive a certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA), follow the steps below to install it on the print server:

Only a certificate issued with your machine's Certificate Signing Request (CSR) can be installed on your machine. When you want to create another CSR, make sure that the certificate is installed before creating the new CSR. Create another CSR only after installing the certificate on the machine, otherwise the CSR created before installing the new CSR will be invalid.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Security > Certificate**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Click **Install Certificate**.
6. Browse to the file that contains the certificate issued by the CA, and then click **Submit**.

The certificate has been created and saved in your machine's memory successfully.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the Root Certificate from the CA must be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



Related Information

- [Create a Certificate Signing Request \(CSR\) and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)

Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key

Store the certificate and private key on your machine and manage them by importing and exporting them.

- [Import a Certificate and Private Key](#)
- [Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

Import a Certificate and Private Key

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Security > Certificate**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Click **Import Certificate and Private Key**.
6. Browse to the file you want to import.
7. Type the password if the file is encrypted, and then click **Submit**.

The certificate and private key are imported to your machine.



Related Information

- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

Export the Certificate and Private Key

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Security > Certificate**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Click **Export** shown with **Certificate List**.
6. Enter the password if you want to encrypt the file.
If a blank password is used, the output is not encrypted.
7. Enter the password again for confirmation, and then click **Submit**.
8. Click **Save**.

The certificate and private key are exported to your computer.

You can also import the certificate to your computer.



Related Information

- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

Import and Export a CA Certificate

You can import, export, and store CA certificates on your Brother machine.

- [Import a CA Certificate](#)
- [Export a CA Certificate](#)

Import a CA Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Security > CA Certificate**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Click **Import CA Certificate**.
6. Browse to the file you want to import.
7. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)

Export a CA Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "**Pwd**". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Security > CA Certificate**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Select the certificate you want to export and click **Export**.
6. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)

Manage Multiple Certificates

The multiple certificate feature allows you to use Web Based Management to manage each certificate installed on your machine. In Web Based Management, navigate to the **Certificate** or **CA Certificate** screen to view certificate content, delete, or export your certificates.

	Maximum Number of Certificates Stored on Brother Machine
Self-signed Certificate or Certificate Issued by a CA	6
CA Certificate	9

We recommend storing fewer certificates than allowed, reserving an empty spot in case of certificate expiration. When a certificate expires, import a new certificate into the reserved spot, and then delete the expired certificate. This ensures that you avoid configuration failure.



- When you use HTTPS/IPPS, IEEE 802.1x, or Signed PDF, you must select which certificate you are using.
- When you use SSL for SMTP communications, you do not have to choose the certificate. The necessary certificate will be chosen automatically.



Related Information

- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)

Use SSL/TLS

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)
- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)
- [Print Documents Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)
- [Send an Email Securely](#)

Introduction to SSL/TLS

Secure Socket Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS) is an effective method of protecting data sent over a local or wide area network (LAN or WAN). It works by encrypting data, such as a print job, sent over a network, so anyone trying to capture it will not be able to read it.

SSL/TLS can be configured on both wired and wireless networks and will work with other forms of security such as WPA keys and firewalls.



Related Information

- [Use SSL/TLS](#)
 - [Brief History of SSL/TLS](#)
 - [Benefits of Using SSL/TLS](#)

Brief History of SSL/TLS

SSL/TLS was originally created to secure web traffic information, particularly data sent between web browsers and servers. SSL is now used with additional applications, such as Telnet, printer, and FTP software, in order to become a universal solution for online security. Its original design intentions are still being used today by many online retailers and banks to secure sensitive data, such as credit card numbers, customer records, etc.

SSL/TLS uses extremely high levels of encryption and is trusted by banks all over the world.



Related Information

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)
-

Benefits of Using SSL/TLS

The primary benefit of using SSL/TLS is to guarantee secure printing over an IP network by restricting unauthorised users from reading data sent to the machine. SSL's most important benefit is that it can be used to print confidential data securely. For example, a Human Resource (HR) Department in a large company may be printing wage slips on a regular basis. Without encryption, the data contained on these wages slips can be read by other network users. However, with SSL/TLS, anyone trying to capture the data will see a page of code and not the actual wage slip.



Related Information

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)

Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS

- [Configure a Certificate for SSL/TLS and Available Protocols](#)
- [Access Web Based Management Using SSL/TLS](#)
- [Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows Users as Administrators](#)
- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)

Configure a Certificate for SSL/TLS and Available Protocols

Configure a certificate on your machine using Web Based Management before you use SSL/TLS communication.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Network > Protocol**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Click **HTTP Server Settings**.
6. Select the certificate you want to configure from the **Select the Certificate** drop-down list.
7. Click **Submit**.
8. Click **Yes** to restart your print server.



Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

Access Web Based Management Using SSL/TLS

To manage your network machine securely, use Web Based Management with the HTTPS protocol.



- To use HTTPS protocol, HTTPS must be enabled on your machine. The HTTPS protocol is enabled by default.
- You can change the HTTPS protocol settings using Web Based Management.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://Common Name" in your browser's address bar (where "Common Name" is the Common Name that you assigned to the certificate; this could be your IP address, node name, or domain name).
3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "**Pwd**". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. You can now access the machine using HTTPS.



Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows Users as Administrators

- The following steps are for Microsoft Edge. If you use another web browser, refer to your web browser's documentation or online help for instructions on how to install certificates.
- Make sure you have created your self-signed certificate using Web Based Management.

1. Right-click the **Microsoft Edge** icon, and then click **Run as administrator**.

If the **User Account Control** screen appears, click **Yes**.

2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If your connection is not private, click the **Advanced** button, and then continue to the web page.
4. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "**Pwd**". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

5. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Security > Certificate**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

6. Click **Export**.
7. To encrypt the output file, type a password in the **Enter password** field. If the **Enter password** field is blank, your output file will not be encrypted.
8. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field, and then click **Submit**.
9. Click the downloaded file to open.
10. When the **Certificate Import Wizard** appears, click **Next**.
11. Click **Next**.
12. If required, type a password, and then click **Next**.
13. Select **Place all certificates in the following store**, and then click **Browse...**
14. Select the **Trusted Root Certification Authorities**, and then click **OK**.
15. Click **Next**.
16. Click **Finish**.
17. Click **Yes**, if the fingerprint (thumbprint) is correct.
18. Click **OK**.



Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

Print Documents Securely Using SSL/TLS

- [Print Documents Using IPPS](#)
- [Configure a Certificate for SSL/TLS and Available Protocols](#)
- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)

Print Documents Using IPPS

To print documents securely with IPP protocol, use the IPPS protocol.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Network > Protocol**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Make sure the **IPP** checkbox is selected.



If the **IPP** checkbox is not selected, select the **IPP** checkbox, and then click **Submit**.

Restart your machine to activate the configuration.

After the machine restarts, return to the machine's web page, type the password, and then in the left navigation bar, click **Network > Network > Protocol**.

6. Click **HTTP Server Settings**.
7. Select the **HTTPS** checkbox in the **IPP** area, and then click **Submit**.
8. Restart your machine to activate the configuration.

Communication using IPPS cannot prevent unauthorised access to the print server.



Related Information

- [Print Documents Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

Use SNMPv3

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SNMPv3](#)

Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SNMPv3

The Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3) provides user authentication and data encryption to manage network devices securely.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://Common Name" in your browser's address bar (where "Common Name" is the Common Name that you assigned to the certificate; this could be your IP address, node name, or domain name).
3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Network > Protocol**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Make sure the **SNMP** setting is enabled, and then click **Advanced Setting**.
6. Configure the SNMPv1/v2c mode settings.

Option	Description
SNMP v1/v2c read-write access	The print server uses version 1 and version 2c of the SNMP protocol. You can use all of your machine's applications in this mode. However, it is not secure since it will not authenticate the user and data will not be encrypted.
SNMPv1/v2c read-only access	The print server uses the read-only access of version 1 and version 2c of the SNMP protocol.
Disabled	Disable version 1 and version 2c of the SNMP protocol. All applications that use SNMPv1/v2c will be restricted. To allow the use of SNMPv1/v2c applications, use the SNMPv1/v2c read-only access or SNMP v1/v2c read-write access mode.

7. Configure the SNMPv3 mode settings.

Option	Description
Enabled	The print server uses version 3 of the SNMP protocol. To manage the print server securely, use the SNMPv3 mode.
Disabled	Disable version 3 of the SNMP protocol. All applications that use SNMPv3 will be restricted. To allow the use of SNMPv3 applications, use the SNMPv3 mode.

8. Click **Submit**.



If your machine displays the protocol setting options, select the options you want.

9. Restart your machine to activate the configuration.



Related Information

- [Use SNMPv3](#)

Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication

- [What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?](#)
- [Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or Wireless Network Using Web Based Management \(Web Browser\)](#)
- [IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods](#)

What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?

IEEE 802.1x is an IEEE standard that limits access from unauthorised network devices. Your Brother machine sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server (Authentication server) through your access point or hub. After your request has been verified by the RADIUS server, your machine can access the network.

Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication](#)
-

Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- Before you verify the server certificate, you must import the CA certificate issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. Contact your network administrator or your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to confirm whether a CA certificate import is necessary.



You can also configure IEEE 802.1x authentication using the Wireless Setup Wizard from the control panel (Wireless network).

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Do one of the following:
 - For the wired network
Click **Wired** > **Wired 802.1x Authentication**.
 - For the wireless network
Click **Wireless** > **Wireless (Enterprise)**.
6. Configure the IEEE 802.1x authentication settings.



- To enable IEEE 802.1x authentication for wired networks, select **Enabled** for **Wired 802.1x status** on the **Wired 802.1x Authentication** page.
- If you are using **EAP-TLS** authentication, you must select the client certificate installed (shown with certificate name) for verification from the **Client Certificate** drop-down list.
- If you select **EAP-FAST**, **PEAP**, **EAP-TTLS**, or **EAP-TLS** authentication, select the verification method from the **Server Certificate Verification** drop-down list. Verify the server certificate using the CA certificate, imported to the machine in advance, issued by the CA that signed the server certificate.

Select one of the following verification methods from the **Server Certificate Verification** drop-down list:

Option	Description
No Verification	The server certificate can always be trusted. The verification is not performed.
CA Cert.	The verification method to check the CA reliability of the server certificate, using the CA certificate issued by the CA that signed the server certificate.
CA Cert. + ServerID	The verification method to check the common name ¹ value of the server certificate, in addition to the CA reliability of the server certificate.

7. When finished with configuration, click **Submit**.

For wired networks: After configuring, connect your machine to the IEEE 802.1x supported network. After a few minutes, print the Network Configuration Report to check the **<Wired IEEE 802.1x>** status.

Option	Description
Success	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is enabled and the authentication was successful.
Failed	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is enabled; however, the authentication failed.
Off	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is not available.

Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication](#)

Related Topics:

- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)
-

¹ The common name verification compares the common name of the server certificate to the character string configured for the **Server ID**. Before you use this method, contact your system administrator about the server certificate's common name and then configure **Server ID**.

IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods

EAP-FAST

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Flexible Authentication via Secured Tunneling (EAP-FAST) has been developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., which uses a user ID and password for authentication, and symmetric key algorithms to achieve a tunnelled authentication process.

Your Brother machine supports the following inner authentication methods:

- EAP-FAST/NONE
- EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2
- EAP-FAST/GTC

EAP-MD5 (Wired network)

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Message Digest Algorithm 5 (EAP-MD5) uses a user ID and password for challenge-response authentication.

PEAP

Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP) is a version of EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., Microsoft Corporation and RSA Security. PEAP creates an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)/Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. PEAP provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

Your Brother machine supports the following inner authentication methods:

- PEAP/MS-CHAPv2
- PEAP/GTC

EAP-TTLS

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Tunneled Transport Layer Security (EAP-TTLS) has been developed by Funk Software and Certicom. EAP-TTLS creates a similar encrypted SSL tunnel to PEAP, between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. EAP-TTLS provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

Your Brother machine supports the following inner authentication methods:

- EAP-TTLS/CHAP
- EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP
- EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2
- EAP-TTLS/PAP

EAP-TLS

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS) requires digital certificate authentication both at a client and an authentication server.



Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication](#)

Use Secure Function Lock 3.0

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Secure Function Lock 3.0 increases security by restricting the functions available on your machine.

- [Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Scan Using Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features](#)
- [Register a new ID Card Using the Machine's Control Panel](#)

Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Use Secure Function Lock to configure passwords, set specific user page limits, and grant access to some or all of the functions listed here.

You can configure and change the following Secure Function Lock 3.0 settings using Web Based Management:

- **Print**

Print includes print jobs sent via AirPrint, Brother iPrint&Scan, and Brother Mobile Connect.

If you register user login names in advance, the users do not need to enter their passwords when they use the print function.

- **Copy**

- **Scan**

Scan includes scan jobs sent via Brother iPrint&Scan and Brother Mobile Connect.

- **Page Limits**


- **Page Counters**

- **Card ID (NFC ID)** (supported models only)

If you register user Card IDs in advance, registered users can activate the machine by touching their registered cards to the machine's NFC symbol.



Touchscreen LCD models:

When Secure Function Lock is enabled, the machine automatically enters Public Mode and some of the machine's functions become restricted to authorised users only. To access the restricted machine functions, press , select your user name, and enter your password.



Related Information

- [Use Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
-

Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2


3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "**Pwd**". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Administrator > User Restriction Function** or **Restriction Management**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from .

5. Select **Secure Function Lock**.
6. Click **Submit**.
7. Click the **Restricted Functions** menu.
8. In the **User List / Restricted Functions** field, type a group name or user name.
9. In the **Print** and the other columns, select a checkbox to allow, or clear a checkbox to restrict, the function listed.
10. To configure the maximum page count, select the **On** checkbox in the **Page Limits** column, and then type the maximum number in the **Max. Pages** field.
11. Click **Submit**.
12. Click the **User List** menu.
13. In the **User List** field, type the user name.
14. In the **Password** field, type a password.



The number of characters you can set differs depending on your model.

15. To register the user's Card ID, type the card number in the **Card ID (NFC ID)** field .
16. Select **User List / Restricted Functions** from the drop-down list for each user.
17. Click **Submit**.



You can also change the user list lockout settings in the **Secure Function Lock** menu.



Related Information

- [Use Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Scan Using Secure Function Lock 3.0

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Setting Scan restrictions (for administrators)

Secure Function Lock 3.0 allows an administrator to restrict which users are allowed to scan. When the Scan feature is set to Off for the public user setting, only users who have the **Scan** check box selected will be able to scan.

Using the Scan feature (for restricted users)

- To scan using the machine's control panel:
Restricted users must enter their passwords on the machine's control panel to access Scan mode.
- To scan from a computer:
Restricted users must enter their passwords on the machine's control panel before scanning from their computers. If the password is not entered on the machine's control panel, an error message will appear on the user's computer.



Related Information

- [Use Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Use the Secure Function Lock screen to set up Public Mode, which limits the functions available to public users. Public users will not need to enter a password to access the features made available through Public Mode settings.



Public Mode includes print jobs sent via Brother iPrint&Scan and Brother Mobile Connect.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Administrator > User Restriction Function** or **Restriction Management**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. Select **Secure Function Lock**.
6. Click **Submit**.
7. Click the **Restricted Functions** menu.
8. In the **Public Mode** row, select a check box to allow, or clear a check box to restrict, the function listed.
9. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Use Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Configure the following features in the Secure Function Lock screen:

All Counter Reset

Click **All Counter Reset**, in the **Page Counters** column, to reset the page counter.

Export to CSV file

Click **Export to CSV file**, to export the current and last page counter including **User List / Restricted Functions** information as a CSV file.

Card ID (NFC ID) (supported models only)

Click the **User List** menu, and then type a user's Card ID in the **Card ID (NFC ID)** field. You can use your IC card for authentication.

Last Counter Record

Click **Last Counter Record** if you want the machine to retain the page count after the counter has been reset.



Related Information

- [Use Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Register a new ID Card Using the Machine's Control Panel

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

1. Touch the Near-Field Communication (NFC) symbol on the machine with a registered Integrated Circuit Card (IC Card).
2. Touch your user ID on the machine.
3. Press [Register Card].
4. Touch a new IC Card to the NFC symbol.
The new IC Card's number is registered to the machine.
5. Press [OK].



Related Information

- [Use Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Send an Email Securely

- [Configure Email Sending Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Send an Email with User Authentication](#)
- [Send an Email Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

Configure Email Sending Using Web Based Management

We recommend using Web Based Management to configure secured email sending with user authentication, or email sending using SSL/TLS.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).
For example:
https://192.168.1.2
3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Network > Network > Protocol**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. In the **SMTP Client** field, click **Advanced Setting** and make sure the status of **SMTP Client** is **Enabled**.



If the **Authentication method** selection screen appears, select your authentication method, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

6. Configure the **SMTP Client** settings.
 - Confirm that the email settings are correct after configuration by sending a test email.
 - If you do not know the SMTP server settings, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider (ISP).
7. When finished, click **Submit**.
The **Test Send E-mail Configuration** dialog box appears.
8. Follow the instructions in the dialog box to test the current settings.



Related Information

- [Send an Email Securely](#)

Send an Email with User Authentication

Your machine sends emails via an email server that requires user authentication. This method prevents unauthorised users from accessing the email server.

You can send email notification and email reports using user authentication. (available for certain models)



We recommend using Web Based Management to configure the SMTP authentication.

Email Server Settings

You must configure your machine's SMTP authentication method to match the method used by your email server. For details about your email server settings, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider (ISP).



To enable SMTP server authentication: in the Web Based Management **SMTP Client** screen, under **Server Authentication Method**, you must select your authentication method.



Related Information

- [Send an Email Securely](#)

Send an Email Securely Using SSL/TLS

Your machine supports SSL/TLS communication methods. To use an email server that is using SSL/TLS communication, you must configure the following settings.



We recommend using Web Based Management to configure SSL/TLS.

Verify Server Certificate

Under **SSL/TLS**, if you choose **SSL** or **TLS**, the **Verify Server Certificate** checkbox will be selected automatically.



- Before you verify the server certificate, you must import the CA certificate issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. Contact your network administrator or your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to confirm if importing a CA certificate is necessary.
- If you do not need to verify the server certificate, clear the **Verify Server Certificate** checkbox.

Port Number

If you select **SSL**, or **TLS**, the **Port** value will be changed to match the protocol. To change the port number manually, type the port number after you select **SSL/TLS** settings.

You must configure your machine's communication method to match the method used by your email server. For details about your email server settings, contact your network administrator or your ISP.

In most cases, the secured webmail services require the following settings:

SMTP	Port	587
	Server Authentication Method	SMTP-AUTH
	SSL/TLS	TLS



Related Information

- [Send an Email Securely](#)

Related Topics:

- [Configure Certificates for Device Security](#)

Store Print Log to Network

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

- [Store Print Log to Network Overview](#)
- [Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Use the Store Print Log to Network's Error Detection Setting](#)
- [Use Store Print Log to Network with Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Store Print Log to Network Overview

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

The Store Print Log to Network feature allows you to save the print log file from your machine to a network server using the Common Internet File System (CIFS) protocol. You can record the ID, type of print job, job name, user name, date, time and the number of printed pages for every print job. CIFS is a protocol that runs over TCP/IP, allowing computers on a network to share files over an intranet or the Internet.

The following print functions are recorded in the print log:

- Print jobs from your computer
- Copy



- The Store Print Log to Network feature supports Kerberos authentication and NTLMv2 authentication. You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server) for Authentication.
- You can set the file type to TXT or CSV when storing a file to the server.



Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.





The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Administrator > Store Print Log to Network**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. In the **Print Log** field, click **On**.
6. Configure the following settings:

Option	Description
Network Folder Path	Type the destination folder where your print log will be stored on the CIFS server (for example: \\ComputerName\SharedFolder).
File Name	Type the file name you want to use for the print log (up to 32 characters).
File Type	Select the TXT or CSV option for the print log file type.
Time Source for Log	Select the time source for the print log.
Auth. Method	Select the authentication method required for access to the CIFS server: Auto , Kerberos , or NTLMv2 . Kerberos is an authentication protocol which allows devices or individuals to securely prove their identity to network servers using a single sign-on. NTLMv2 is the authentication method used by Windows to log into servers. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Auto: If you select Auto, NTLMv2 will be used to the authentication method.• Kerberos: Select the Kerberos option to use Kerberos authentication only.• NTLMv2: Select the NTLMv2 option to use NTLMv2 authentication only.  <p>For the Kerberos and NTLMv2 authentication, you must also configure the SNTP protocol (network time server) and DNS server.</p>
Username	Type the user name for the authentication (up to 96 characters).  <p>If the user name is part of a domain, enter the user name in one of the following styles: user@domain or domain\user.</p>
Password	Type the password for the authentication (up to 32 characters).

Option	Description
Kerberos Server Address (if needed)	Type the Key Distribution Center (KDC) host address (for example: kerberos.example.com; up to 64 characters) or the IP address (for example: 192.168.56.189).
Error Detection Setting	Choose what action should be taken when the print log cannot be stored to the server due to a network error.

7. In the **Connection Status** field, confirm the last log status.



You can also confirm the error status on the LCD of your machine.

8. Click **Submit** to display the **Test Print Log to Network** page.

To test your settings, click **Yes** and then go to the next step.

To skip the test, click **No**. Your settings will be submitted automatically.

9. The machine will test your settings.

10. If your settings are accepted, **Test OK** appears on the screen.

If **Test Error** appears, check all settings, and then click **Submit** to display the Test page again.



Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)
-

Use the Store Print Log to Network's Error Detection Setting

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Use Error Detection Settings to determine the action that is taken when the print log cannot be stored to the server due to a network error.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. In the left navigation bar, click **Administrator** > **Store Print Log to Network**.



If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. In the **Error Detection Setting** section, select the **Cancel Print** or **Ignore Log & Print** option.

Option	Description
Cancel Print	If you select the Cancel Print option, the print jobs are cancelled when the print log cannot be stored to the server.
Ignore Log & Print	If you select the Ignore Log & Print option, the machine prints the documentation even if the print log cannot be stored to the server.

When the Store Print Log function has recovered, the print log is recorded as follows:

```
Id, Type, Job Name, User Name, Date, Time, Print Pages
1, Print(xxxxxxx), "Document01.doc", "user01", 03/03/20xx, 14:01:32, 52
2, Print(xxxxxxx), "Document02.doc", "user01", 03/03/20xx, 14:45:30, ?
3, <ERROR>, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?
4, Print(xxxxxxx), "Report01.xls", "user02", 03/03/20xx, 19:30:40, 4
```

- a. If the print log cannot be stored at the end of printing, the number of printed pages will not be recorded.
- b. If the print log cannot be stored at the beginning and the end of printing, the print log of the job will not be recorded. When the function has recovered, the error is reflected in the print log.

6. Click **Submit** to display the **Test Print Log to Network** page.

To test your settings, click **Yes** and then go to the next step.

To skip the test, click **No**. Your settings will be submitted automatically.

7. The machine will test your settings.

8. If your settings are accepted, **Test OK** appears on the screen.

If **Test Error** appears, check all settings, and then click **Submit** to display the Test page again.



Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)
-

Use Store Print Log to Network with Secure Function Lock 3.0

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

When Secure Function Lock 3.0 is active, the names of the registered users for copy and USB Direct Print (if available) are recorded in the Store Print Log to Network report.

```
Id, Type, Job Name, User Name, Date, Time, Print Pages
1, Copy, -, -, 04/04/20xx, 09:05:12, 3
2, Copy, -, "BOB", 04/04/20xx, 10:20:30, 4
```

Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

Lock the Machine Settings from the Control Panel

Before turning the machine's Setting Lock on, write down and save your password. If you forget the password, you must reset all passwords stored in the machine by contacting your administrator or Brother customer service.

Use Global Network Detection Features

When you use your machine on a private network, use the Global Network Detection feature to avoid a risk from unexpected attacks from the global network.

- [Enable Global IP Address Detection](#)
- [Block Communications from the Global Network](#)

Enable Global IP Address Detection



Use this feature to check your machine's IP address. When your machine is assigned to a global IP address, an alert is displayed on the machine.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Global Detect] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Allow Detect] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [On], and then press **OK**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Global Detect] > [Allow Detect] > [On].
2. Press .

Related Information

- [Use Global Network Detection Features](#)

Block Communications from the Global Network





When you enable this feature, it limits receiving jobs from devices with global IP addresses

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Global Detect] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Reject Access] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [On], and then press **OK**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Global Detect] > [Reject Access] > [On].
2. Press .



Related Information

- [Use Global Network Detection Features](#)

Mobile Connect

- [AirPrint](#)
- [Mopria™ Print Service and Mopria™ Scan](#)
- [Brother Mobile Connect](#)
- [WeChat Print](#)

AirPrint

- [AirPrint Overview](#)
- [Before Using AirPrint \(macOS\)](#)
- [Print Using AirPrint](#)
- [Scan Using AirPrint \(macOS\)](#)

AirPrint Overview

AirPrint is a printing solution for Apple operating systems that allows you to wirelessly print photos, email, web pages, and documents from your iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, and Mac computer without the need to install a driver.

AirPrint also allows you to scan documents to your Mac computer.

For more information, visit Apple's website.

Use of the Works with Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to work specifically with the technology identified in the badge and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.



✓ Related Information

- [AirPrint](#)

Related Topics:

- [AirPrint Problems](#)

Before Using AirPrint (macOS)

Before printing using macOS, add your machine to the printer list on your Mac computer.

1. Do one of the following:
 - macOS v13
Select **System Settings** from the Apple menu.
 - macOS v12 and macOS v11
Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
2. Select **Printers & Scanners**.
3. Do one of the following:
 - macOS v13
Click **Add Printer, Scanner, or Fax....**
 - macOS v12 and macOS v11
Click the + icon below the Printers pane on the left.
The **Add Printer** screen appears.
4. Do one of the following:
 - macOS v13 and macOS v12
Select your machine, and then select your model's name from the **Use** pop-up menu.
 - macOS v11
Select your machine, and then select **AirPrint** from the **Use** pop-up menu.
5. Click **Add**.

✓ Related Information



- [AirPrint](#)

Print Using AirPrint

- [Print from iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch](#)
- [Print Using AirPrint \(macOS\)](#)

Print from iPad, iPhone, or iPod touch

The procedure used to print may vary by application. Safari is used in the example below.

1. Make sure your machine is turned on.
2. Load the paper in the paper tray and change the paper tray settings on your machine.
3. Use Safari to open the page that you want to print.
4. Tap  or .
5. Tap **Print**.
6. Make sure your machine is selected.
7. If a different machine (or no machine) is selected, tap **Printer**.
A list of available machines appears.
8. Tap your machine's name in the list.
9. Select the options you want, such as the number of pages to print and 2-sided printing (if supported by your machine).
10. Tap **Print**.



Related Information

- [Print Using AirPrint](#)

Print Using AirPrint (macOS)

The procedure used to print may vary by application. Safari is used in the example below. Before printing, make sure your machine is in the printer list on your Mac computer.

1. Make sure your machine is turned on.
2. Load the paper in the paper tray and change the paper tray settings on your machine.
3. On your Mac computer, use Safari to open the page that you want to print.
4. Click the **File** menu, and then select **Print**.
5. Make sure your machine is selected. If a different machine (or no machine) is selected, click the **Printer** pop-up menu, and then select your machine.
6. Select the desired options, such as the number of pages to print and 2-sided printing (if supported by your machine).
7. Click **Print**.



Related Information

- [Print Using AirPrint](#)

Related Topics:

- [Before Using AirPrint \(macOS\)](#)

Scan Using AirPrint (macOS)

Before scanning, make sure your machine is in the scanner list on your Mac computer.

1. [Load your document](#).
2. Do one of the following:
 - macOS v13
Select **System Settings** from the Apple menu.
 - macOS v12 and macOS v11
Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
3. Select **Printers & Scanners**.
4. Select your machine from the scanner list.
5. Do one of the following:
 - macOS v13
Click the **Open Scanner...** button.
 - macOS v12 and macOS v11
Click the **Scan** tab, and then click the **Open Scanner...** button.The Scanner screen appears.
6. If you place the document in the ADF, select **Use Document Feeder** checkbox, and then select the size of your document from the scan size setting pop-up menu.
7. Select the destination folder or destination application from the destination setting pop-up menu.
8. Click **Show Details** to change the scanning settings if needed.

You can crop the image manually by dragging the mouse pointer over the portion you want to scan when scanning from the scanner glass.
9. Click **Scan**.



Related Information

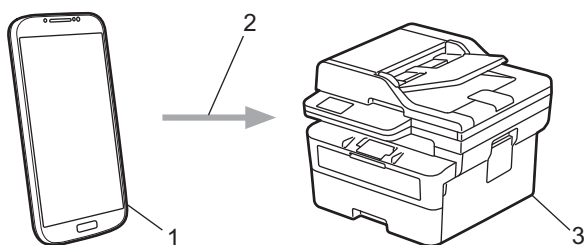
- [AirPrint](#)

Related Topics:

- [Before Using AirPrint \(macOS\)](#)

Mopria™ Print Service and Mopria™ Scan

Mopria™ Print Service is a print feature and Mopria™ Scan is a scan feature on Android™ mobile devices developed by the Mopria Alliance™. With this service, you can connect to the same network as your machine to print and scan without additional setup.



1. Android™ Mobile Device
2. Wi-Fi® Connection
3. Your Machine

The Mopria™ Print Service or Mopria™ Scan must be downloaded from a search engine and installed on your Android™ device. Before using these Mopria™ features, make sure you enable them on your mobile device.

Related Information

- [Mobile Connect](#)

Brother Mobile Connect

Use Brother Mobile Connect to print and scan from your mobile device.

- For Android™ devices:

Brother Mobile Connect allows you to use your Brother machine's features directly from your Android™ device.

Go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads to download Brother Mobile Connect.

- For all iOS or iPadOS supported devices including iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch:

Brother Mobile Connect allows you to use your Brother machine's features directly from your iOS or iPadOS device.

Download and install Brother Mobile Connect from the App Store.



Related Information

- [Mobile Connect](#)

Related Topics:

- [Access Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
-

WeChat Print

Your machine can print through an app for WeChat, which is called "兄弟畅享印". "兄弟畅享印" lets you wirelessly print photos and documents without installing a driver.

- Connect your machine before using WeChat print function for the first time. Go to www.brother.cn/minisite/bcnactivity/FAQ.html for operation instructions.
- You need to install and set up Brother Mobile Connect on your mobile device. For more information, see *Related Information*.
- For network setups that use a proxy server, the machine must also be configured to use a proxy server. If you are unsure of your network configuration, check with your network administrator.

1. Start Brother Mobile Connect on your mobile device.
2. Tap **WeChat Print** on the Home screen.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.
4. When the **Online Functions Settings** screen appears, tap the **Enable** button, and then follow the on-screen instructions.



(DCP-B7658DW)

You can also configure the settings from your machine. Press [Apps] > [Online Functions], and then follow the on-screen instructions.

If the End-User License Agreement (EULA) screen appears, follow the on-screen instructions.



Related Information

- [Mobile Connect](#)

Related Topics:

- [Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Troubleshooting

Use this section to resolve typical problems you may encounter when using your machine. You can correct most problems yourself.

IMPORTANT

For technical help, you must call Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.



If you need additional help, visit support.brother.com.

First, check the following:

- The machine's power cord is connected correctly and the machine's power is on. See the *Quick Setup Guide*.
- All of the protective materials have been removed. See the *Quick Setup Guide*.
- Paper is loaded correctly in the paper tray.
- The interface cables are securely connected to the machine and the computer, or the wireless connection is set up on both the machine and your computer.
- Error and maintenance messages

If you did not solve the problem with the checks, identify the problem and then see *Related Information*.



Related Information

- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)
- [Document Jams](#)
- [Paper Jams](#)
- [Printing Problems](#)
- [Improve the Print Quality](#)
- [Network Problems](#)
- [AirPrint Problems](#)
- [Other Problems](#)
- [Check the Machine Information](#)
- [Update Your Machine's Firmware](#)
- [Reset Your Machine](#)

Error and Maintenance Messages



As with any sophisticated office product, errors may occur and supply items may have to be replaced. If this happens, your machine identifies the error or required routine maintenance and shows the appropriate message. The most common error and maintenance messages are shown in the table.


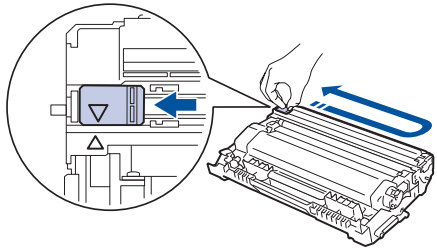
Follow the instructions in the **Action** column to solve the error and remove the message.


You can correct most errors and perform routine maintenance by yourself. If you need more tips: Visit support.brother.com/faqs.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW




Error Message	Cause	Action
2-sided Disabled (For automatic 2-sided printing models)	The back cover of the machine is not closed completely.	Close the back cover of the machine until it locks in the closed position.
	The 2-sided tray is not installed completely.	Install the 2-sided tray firmly in the machine.
Cannot Detect	Your machine cannot detect the drum unit.	Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly. Remove the toner cartridge from the drum unit, and reinstall the toner cartridge back in the drum unit. Reinstall the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back in the machine.
	Your machine cannot detect the toner cartridge.	
Cannot Print ##	The machine has a mechanical problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few minutes, and then turn it on again. If the problem continues, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Cannot Scan ##	The machine has a mechanical problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove the document. Press and hold  to turn the machine off, and then turn it on again. If the problem continues, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Cartridge Error Put the Black (BK) Toner Cartridge back in.	The toner cartridge is not installed correctly.	<p>Pull out the drum unit and toner cartridge assembly, take out the toner cartridge, and put it back in the drum unit again. Put the drum unit and toner cartridge assembly back in the machine.</p> <p>If the problem continues, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.</p>
Cooling Down	The temperature of the inside of the machine is too hot. The machine will pause its current print job and enter cooling down mode. While the machine cools, the cooling fan runs	<p>Wait until the machine has finished cooling down. Make sure all vents on the machine are clear of obstructions.</p> <p>When the machine has cooled down, it will resume printing.</p>



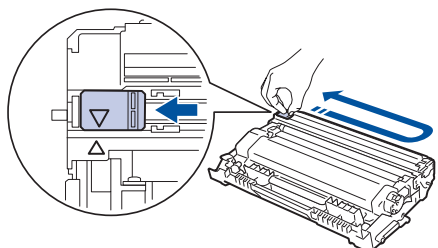
Error Message	Cause	Action
	and the LCD displays Cooling Down .	If the fan is not spinning, disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, then reconnect it.
Cover is Open	The front cover is not completely closed.	Open and then firmly close the front cover of the machine.
	The fuser cover is not completely closed or paper was jammed in the back of the machine when you turned on the power.	Close the fuser cover located inside the back cover of the machine.
	The ADF cover is not completely closed.	Close the ADF cover. Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few minutes, and then turn it on again. If the problem continues, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Document Jam	The document was not inserted or fed correctly, or the document scanned from the ADF was too long.	Remove the jammed paper from the ADF unit. Clear any debris or scraps of paper from the ADF unit paper path. Press 停止/退出 .
Drum ! Slide the Green tab on Drum Unit.	The corona wire on the drum unit must be cleaned.	Clean the corona wire on the drum unit. 
	The drum unit or the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly is not installed correctly.	Put the toner cartridge in the drum unit. Then reinstall the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly in the machine.
Drum End Soon	The drum unit is near the end of its life.	Order a new drum unit before you get the Replace Drum message.
Jam 2-sided	The paper is jammed in the 2-sided paper tray.	Pull the paper tray and the 2-sided tray out completely, open the back cover and then remove all jammed paper. Close the back cover, and put the paper tray and the 2-sided tray firmly back in the machine.
Jam Inside	The paper is jammed inside the machine.	Open the front cover and remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly. Pull out all jammed paper. Close the front cover. If the error message remains, press 启动 .
Jam Rear	The paper is jammed in the back of the machine.	Open the fuser cover and remove all jammed paper. Close the fuser cover. If the error message remains, press 启动 .
Jam Tray 1	The paper is jammed in the indicated paper tray.	Pull the paper tray out completely and gently remove all jammed paper. Put the paper tray firmly back in the machine.


Error Message	Cause	Action
Manual Feed	Manual was selected as the paper source in the printer driver, but there is no paper in the manual feed slot.	Place paper in the manual feed slot.
Media Mismatch	The media type specified in the printer driver differs from the paper type specified in the machine's menu.	Load the correct type of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD, or select the correct media type in the Paper Type setting on the machine.
No Drum Unit	The drum unit is not installed correctly.	Reinstall the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Drum Unit.</i>
No Paper T1	The machine is out of paper, or paper is not loaded correctly in the paper trays.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refill paper in the paper trays. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size. • If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size. • Do not overfill the paper tray.
No Toner	The toner cartridge or the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly is not installed correctly.	Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly. Remove the toner cartridge from the drum unit, and reinstall the toner cartridge back in the drum unit. Reinstall the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back in the machine. If the problem continues, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Toner Cartridge.</i>
Out of Memory	The machine's memory is full.	<p>If a copy operation is in progress, do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press 启动 to copy the scanned pages. • Press 停止/退出 and wait until the other operations in progress finish, and then try again. <p>If a print operation is in process Reduce the print resolution.</p>
Replace Drum	It is time to replace the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Drum Unit.</i>
	If this message is displayed even after replacing the drum unit with new one, the drum unit counter was not reset.	Reset the drum unit counter. <i>See Related Information: Reset the Drum Counter.</i>
Replace Toner	The toner cartridge is at the end of its life. The machine stops all print operations.	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Toner Cartridge.</i>
Self-Diagnostic/Turn the power off, then on again. Leave the machine for 15 min.	The fuser unit does not work correctly.	Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few seconds, and then turn it on again. Leave the machine idle for 15 minutes with the power on.
	The fuser unit is too hot.	




Error Message	Cause	Action
Size Error DX (For automatic 2-sided printing models)	The paper size specified in the printer driver and the machine's paper size setting are not suitable for automatic 2-sided printing.	Press 停止/退出 . Choose a paper size suitable for 2-sided printing. The paper size suitable for automatic 2-sided printing is A4.
	The paper in the tray is not the correct size and is not suitable for automatic 2-sided printing.	Load the correct size of paper in the tray and set the tray for that paper size. The paper size suitable for automatic 2-sided printing is A4.
Size Mismatch	The paper in the tray is not the correct size.	Load the correct size of paper in the tray and set the size of paper to the tray.
Toner Ended	The toner cartridge is at the end of its life. The machine stops all print operations.	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
Toner Low	If the LCD displays this message, you can still print. The toner cartridge is near the end of its life.	Order a new toner cartridge now so a replacement toner cartridge is available when the LCD displays Replace Toner .
Wrong Toner	The installed toner cartridge is not correct for your machine.	Remove the toner cartridge from the drum unit, and install a toner cartridge with the correct supply product code. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Toner Cartridge.</i>

DCP-B7658DW

Error Message	Cause	Action
2-sided Disabled	The back cover of the machine is not closed completely.	Close the back cover of the machine until it locks in the closed position.
	The 2-sided tray is not installed completely.	Install the 2-sided tray firmly in the machine.
Access Denied	The function you want to use is restricted by Secure Function Lock 3.0.	Call your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.
Cannot Detect	Your machine cannot detect the drum unit.	Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly. Remove the toner cartridge from the drum unit, and reinstall the toner cartridge back in the drum unit. Reinstall the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back in the machine.
	Your machine cannot detect the toner cartridge.	
Cannot Print ##	The machine has a mechanical problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few minutes, and then turn it on again. If the problem continues, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Cannot Scan	The document is too long for 2-sided scanning.	Press  . Use an appropriate size paper for 2-sided scanning.
Cannot Scan ##	The machine has a mechanical problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold  to turn the machine off, and then turn it on again.

Error Message	Cause	Action
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the problem continues, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Cartridge Error Put the Toner Cartridge back in.	The toner cartridge is not installed correctly.	<p>Pull out the drum unit and toner cartridge assembly, take out the toner cartridge, and put it back in the drum unit again. Put the drum unit and toner cartridge assembly back in the machine.</p> <p>If the problem continues, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.</p>
Cooling Down	The temperature of the inside of the machine is too hot. The machine will pause its current print job and go into cooling down mode. During the cooling down mode, you will hear the cooling fan running while the LCD displays <i>Cooling Down</i> .	<p>Wait until the machine has finished cooling down. Make sure all vents on the machine are clear of obstructions. When the machine has cooled down, it will resume printing.</p> <p>If the fan is not spinning, disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, then reconnect it.</p>
Cover is Open	The front cover is not completely closed.	Open and then firmly close the front cover of the machine.
	The fuser cover is not completely closed or paper was jammed in the back of the machine when you turned on the power.	Close the fuser cover located inside the back cover of the machine.
	The ADF cover is not completely closed.	<p>Close the ADF cover.</p> <p>Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few minutes, and then turn it on again.</p> <p>If the problem continues, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.</p>
Document Jam	The document was not inserted or fed correctly, or the document scanned from the ADF was too long.	<p>Remove the jammed paper from the ADF unit.</p> <p>Clear any debris or scraps of paper from the ADF unit paper path.</p> <p>Press .</p>
Drum !	The corona wire on the drum unit must be cleaned.	<p>Clean the corona wire on the drum unit.</p> 
	The drum unit or the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly is not installed correctly.	Put the toner cartridge in the drum unit. Then reinstall the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly in the machine.
Drum End Soon	The drum unit is near the end of its life.	Order a new drum unit before you get the <i>Replace Drum</i> message.

Error Message	Cause	Action
Jam 2-sided	The paper is jammed in the 2-sided paper tray.	Pull the paper tray and the 2-sided tray out completely, open the back cover and then remove all jammed paper. Close the back cover, and put the paper tray and the 2-sided tray firmly back in the machine.
Jam Inside	The paper is jammed inside the machine.	Open the front cover and remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly. Pull out the jammed paper. Close the front cover.
Jam Rear	The paper is jammed in the back of the machine.	Open the fuser cover and remove all jammed paper. Close the fuser cover. If the error message remains, press Retry .
Jam Tray 1	The paper is jammed in the indicated paper tray.	Pull the paper tray out completely and gently remove all jammed paper. Put the paper tray firmly back in the machine.
Limit Exceeded	The print limit set in Secure Function Lock 3.0 was reached.	Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock settings.
Manual Feed	Manual was selected as the paper source in the printer driver, but there is no paper in the manual feed slot.	Place paper in the manual feed slot.
Media Type Mismatch	The media type specified in the printer driver differs from the paper type specified in the machine's menu.	Load the correct type of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD, or select the correct media type in the Paper Type setting on the machine.
No Drum Unit	The drum unit is not installed correctly.	Reinstall the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Drum Unit.</i>
No Paper Tray1	The machine is out of paper, or paper is not loaded correctly in the paper trays.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refill paper in the paper trays. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size. • If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size. • Do not overfill the paper tray.
No Toner	The toner cartridge or the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly is not installed correctly.	Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly. Remove the toner cartridge from the drum unit, and reinstall the toner cartridge back in the drum unit. Reinstall the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back in the machine. If the problem continues, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Toner Cartridge.</i>
Out of Memory	The machine's memory is full.	Reduce the print resolution. Press  or Quit , and wait until the other operations that are in progress finish, and then try again. If a print operation is in process Reduce the print resolution.

Error Message	Cause	Action
Print Data Full	The machine's memory is full.	Press  and delete the previously stored secure print data.
Replace Drum	It is time to replace the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Drum Unit.</i>
	If this message is displayed even after replacing the drum unit with new one, the drum unit counter was not reset.	Reset the drum unit counter. <i>See Related Information: Reset the Drum Counter.</i>
Replace Toner	The toner cartridge is at the end of its life. The machine stops all print operations.	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Toner Cartridge.</i>
Self-Diagnostic	The fuser unit does not work correctly.	Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few seconds, and then turn it on again. Leave the machine idle for 15 minutes with the power on.
	The fuser unit is too hot.	
Size Error	The paper tray you selected does not support the paper size specified in the printer driver.	Change the printer driver setting or machine's tray setting so that the paper size selected in the printer driver matches the paper size loaded in the tray you selected.
Size Error 2-sided	The paper size specified in the printer driver and the machine's paper size setting are not suitable for automatic 2-sided printing.	Press  . Choose a paper size suitable for 2-sided printing. The paper size suitable for automatic 2-sided printing is A4.
	The paper in the tray is not the correct size and is not suitable for automatic 2-sided printing.	Load the correct size of paper in the tray and set the tray for that paper size. The paper size suitable for automatic 2-sided printing is A4.
Size Mismatch	The paper in the tray is not the correct size.	Load the correct size of paper in the tray and set the size of paper to the tray.
Toner Ended	The toner cartridge is at the end of its life.	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
Toner Low	If the LCD displays this message, you can still print. The toner cartridge is near the end of its life.	Order a new toner cartridge now so a replacement toner cartridge is available when the LCD shows <code>Replace Toner</code> .
Touchscreen Initialisation Failed	The touchscreen was pressed before the power on initialization was completed.	Make sure nothing is touching or resting on the touchscreen.
	Debris may be stuck between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame.	Insert a piece of stiff paper between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame and slide it back and forth to push out the debris.
Wrong Toner Cartridge	The installed toner cartridge is not correct for your machine.	Remove the toner cartridge from the drum unit, and install a toner cartridge with the correct supply product code. <i>See Related Information: Replace the Toner Cartridge.</i>



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Related Topics:

- [Replace the Toner Cartridge](#)
- [Replace the Drum Unit](#)
- [Clean the Corona Wire](#)
- [Load Paper](#)
- [Reset the Drum Counter](#)

Document Jams

Related Models: DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW


- [Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit](#)
- [Document is Jammed under the Document Cover](#)
- [Remove Small Scraps of Paper Jammed in the ADF](#)

Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit

Related Models: DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

1. Remove any paper from the ADF that is not jammed.
2. Open the ADF cover.
3. Pull the jammed document out to the left. If the document rips or tears, be sure you remove any debris or scraps to prevent future jams.



4. Close the ADF cover.
5. Press 停止/退出 or .

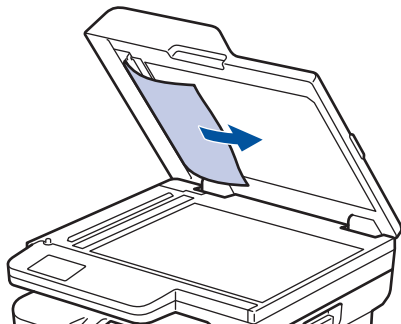
Related Information


- [Document Jams](#)

Document is Jammed under the Document Cover

Related Models: DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

1. Remove any paper from the ADF that is not jammed.
2. Lift the document cover.
3. Pull the jammed document out to the right. If the document rips or tears, be sure you remove any debris or scraps to prevent future jams.



4. Close the document cover.
5. Press 停止/退出 or .



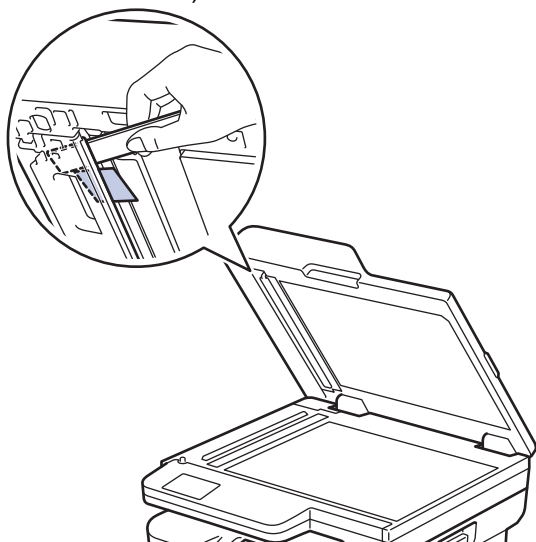
Related Information

- [Document Jams](#)

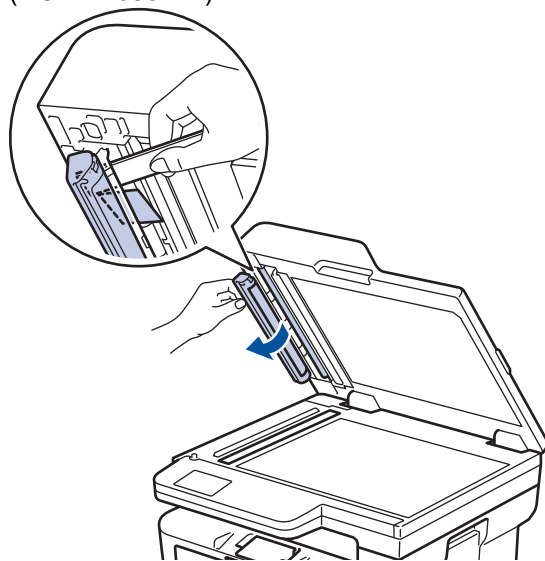
Remove Small Scraps of Paper Jammed in the ADF


Related Models: DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

1. Lift the document cover.
2. Insert a piece of stiff paper, such as cardstock, into the ADF to push any small paper scraps through.
(DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/
DCP-B7648DW)



(DCP-B7658DW)



3. Close the document cover.
4. Press 停止/退出 or .

✓ Related Information

- [Document Jams](#)

Paper Jams

Always remove the remaining paper from the paper tray, fan and straighten the stack when you are adding new paper. This helps prevent paper jams.

- [Clear Paper Jams](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the Output Paper Tray](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine](#)
- [Paper is Jammed inside the Machine](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray](#)

Clear Paper Jams

If paper is jammed or multiple sheets of paper are fed together frequently, do the following:

- Clean the paper pick-up rollers and the separator pad of paper trays.
See Related Information: Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers.
- Load paper correctly in the tray.
See Related Information: Load Paper.
- Set the correct paper size and paper type on your machine.
See Related Information: Paper Settings.
- Set the correct paper size and paper type on your computer.
See Related Information: Print a Document (Windows).
See Related Information: Print Using AirPrint.
- Use the recommended paper.
See Related Information: Using Special Paper.
See Related Information: Recommended Print Media.



Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

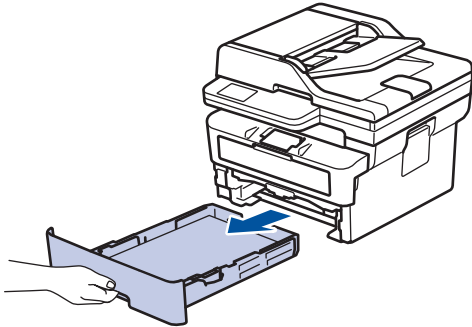
Related Topics:

- [Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers](#)
- [Load Paper](#)
- [Paper Settings](#)
- [Print a Document \(Windows\)](#)
- [Print Using AirPrint](#)
- [Using Special Paper](#)
- [Recommended Print Media](#)

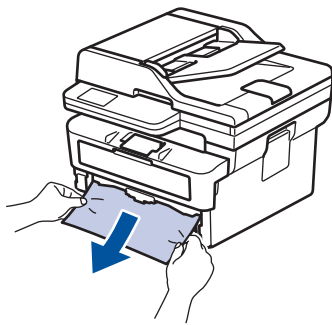
Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray

If the machine's control panel or the Status Monitor indicates that there is a jam in the paper tray, follow these steps:

1. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.

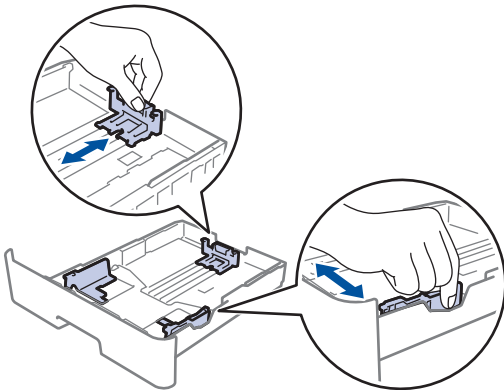


2. Slowly pull out the jammed paper.

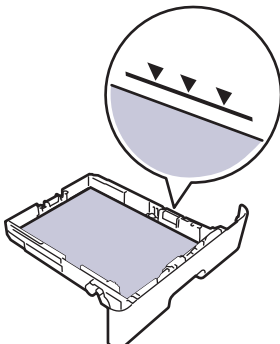


Pulling the jammed paper downwards using both hands allows you to remove the paper more easily.

3. Fan the stack of paper to prevent further jams, and slide the paper guides to fit the paper size. Load paper in the paper tray.



4. Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (▼▼▼).



5. Put the paper tray firmly back into the machine.



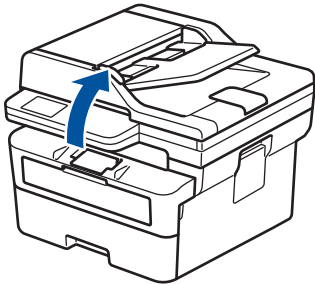
Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)
-

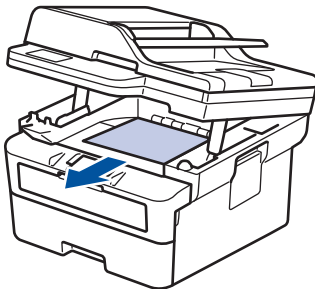
Paper is Jammed in the Output Paper Tray

When the paper is jammed in the output paper tray, follow these steps:

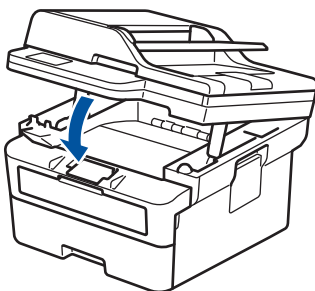
1. Use both hands to open the scanner.



2. Remove the paper.



3. Push the scanner down with both hands to close it.



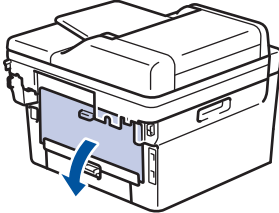
✓ Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

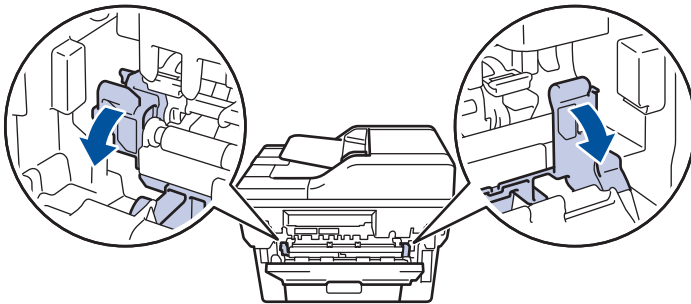
Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine

If the machine's control panel or the Status Monitor indicates that there is a jam in the back of the machine (Jam Rear), do the following:

1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Open the back cover.



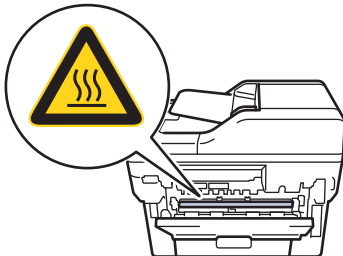
3. Pull the blue tabs at the left and right sides towards you to release the fuser cover.



WARNING

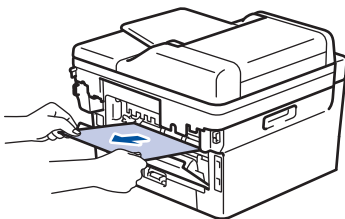
HOT SURFACE

The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.

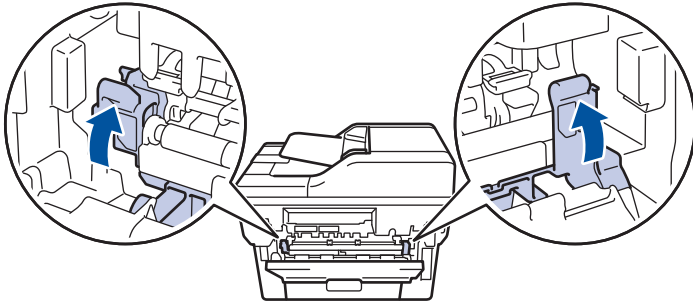


If the green envelope levers inside the back cover are pulled down to the envelope position, lift these levers to the original position before pulling the blue tabs down.

4. Use both hands to gently pull the jammed paper out of the machine.



5. Close the fuser cover.



If you print on envelopes, pull down the green envelope levers to the envelope position again before closing the back cover.

6. Close the back cover until it locks in the closed position.



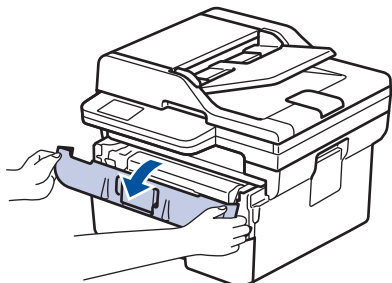
Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)
-

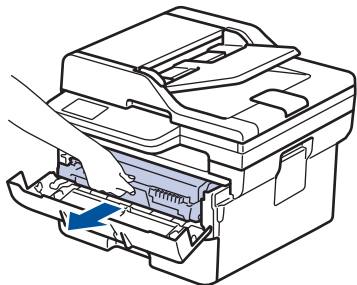
Paper is Jammed inside the Machine

If the machine's control panel or the Status Monitor indicates that there is a jam inside the machine, follow these steps:

1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Open the front cover.



3. Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly.



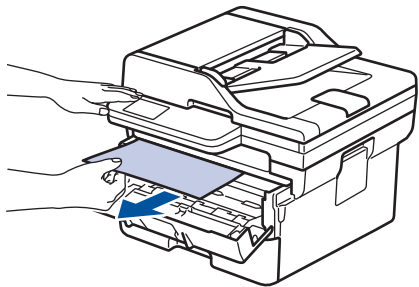
WARNING

HOT SURFACE

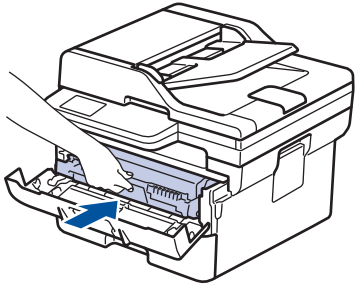
The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.



4. Pull out the jammed paper slowly.



-
5. Install the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly into the machine.



6. Close the front cover.



Related Information

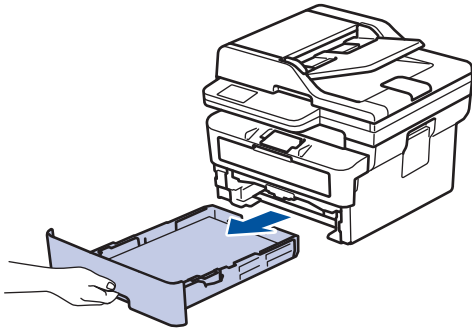
- [Paper Jams](#)
-

Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray

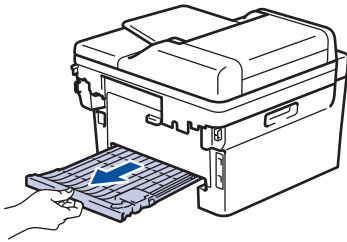
Related Models: DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

If the machine's control panel or the Status Monitor indicates that there is a jam in the 2-sided paper tray, follow these steps:

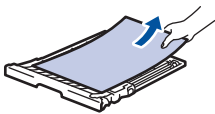
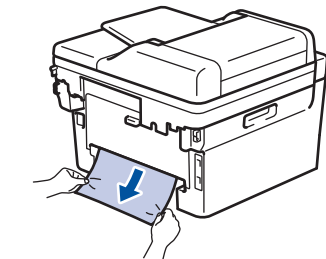
1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



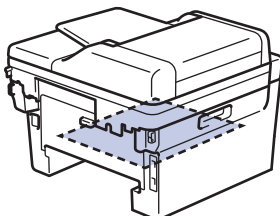
3. At the back of the machine, pull the 2-sided tray completely out of the machine.



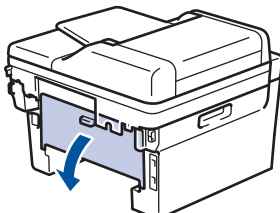
4. Pull the jammed paper out of the machine or out of the 2-sided tray.



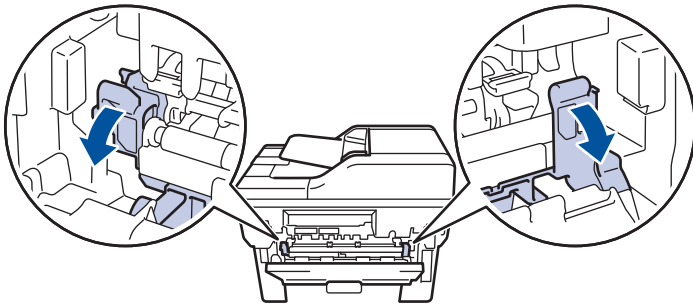
5. Remove paper that may have jammed under the machine due to static electricity.



6. If paper is not caught inside the 2-sided tray, open the back cover.



7. Pull the blue tabs at the left and right sides towards you to release the fuser cover.

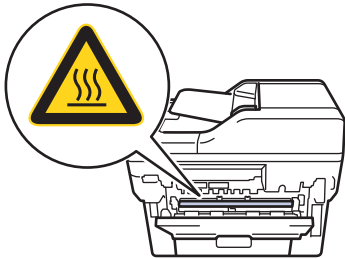


If the green envelope levers inside the back cover are pulled down to the envelope position, lift these levers to the original position before pulling the blue tabs down.

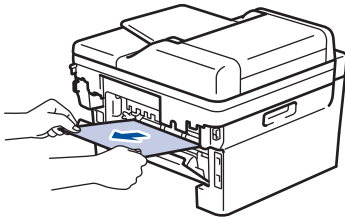
WARNING

HOT SURFACE

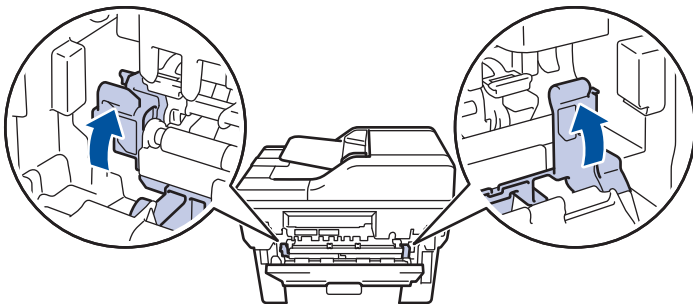
The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.



8. Use both hands to gently pull the jammed paper out of the back of the machine.



9. Close the fuser cover.



If you print on envelopes, pull down the green envelope levers to the envelope position again before closing the back cover.

10. Close the back cover until it locks in the closed position.

11. Push the 2-sided tray firmly back into the back of the machine.

12. Push the paper tray firmly back into the front of the machine.




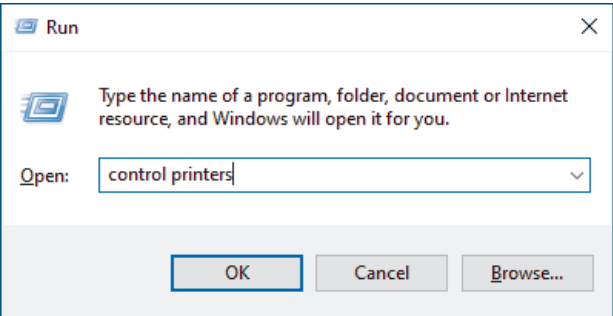



Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

Printing Problems

If, after reading the information in this table, you still need help, see the latest troubleshooting tips at support.brother.com/faqs.

Difficulties	Suggestions
No printout	<p>Check the machine is not in Power Off mode.</p> <p>If the machine is in Power Off mode, press , and then send the print data again.</p> <p>Check that the correct printer driver has been installed and selected.</p> <p>Check to see if the Status Monitor or the machine's control panel displays an error.</p> <p>Check that the machine is online:</p> <p>Windows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Hold down the  key and press the  key on the computer's keyboard to launch Run. 2. Type "control printers" in the Open: field and click OK. <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px;">  </div> <p>The Devices and Printers window appears.</p> <p> If the Devices and Printers window does not appear, click View more devices > More devices and printer settings.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Right-click your model's icon, and then click See what's printing. 4. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. 5. Click Printer in the menu bar and make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected. <p>Mac:</p> <p>Click the System Preferences or System Settings menu, and then select the Printers & Scanners option. When the machine is offline, delete it, and then add it again.</p>
The machine is not printing or has stopped printing.	<p>Cancel the print job and clear it from the machine's memory. The printout may be incomplete. Send the print data again.</p> <p><i>See Related Information: Cancel a Print Job.</i></p>
The headers or footers appear when the document displays on the screen but they do not show up when it is printed.	<p>There is an unprintable area on the top and bottom of the page. Adjust the top and bottom margins in your document to allow for this.</p>

Difficulties	Suggestions
The machine prints unexpectedly or it prints garbled text.	Cancel the print job and clear it from the machine's memory. The printout may be incomplete. Send the print data again. <i>See Related Information:Cancel a Print Job.</i>
	Check the settings in your application to make sure they are set up to work with your machine.
	Confirm that the Brother printer driver is selected in your application's Print window.
The machine prints the first couple of pages correctly, then some pages have missing text.	Check the settings in your application to make sure they are set up to work with your machine.
	Your machine is not receiving all of the data sent from the computer. Make sure you connected the interface cable correctly.
Cannot print on 1-sided or 2-sided.	(Windows) Change the 2-sided option in the printer driver. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you want to make a temporary change, select None or 2-sided in the printer driver from your application: <i>See Related Information: Print a Document (Windows).</i> If you want to make a permanent change, change the default printer driver settings: <i>See Related Information:Change the Default Print Settings (Windows).</i>
The machine does not print on both sides of the paper even though the printer driver setting is 2-sided and the machine supports automatic 2-sided printing.	Check the paper size setting in the printer driver. You must select A4 paper. Supported paper weight is 60 to 105g/m ²
Print speed is too slow.	Reduce the resolution in the printer driver.
	If you have enabled Quiet Mode, disable it in the printer driver or the machine's menu.
	When printing continuously, the printing speed may be automatically reduced to lower the temperature inside the machine.
The machine does not feed paper.	If there is paper in the paper tray, make sure it is straight. If the paper is curled, straighten it. Sometimes it is helpful to remove the paper, turn the stack over and place it back in the paper tray.
	Fan the stack of paper well and place it back to the paper tray.
	Reduce the amount of paper in the paper tray, and then try again.
	(For models with Manual Feed Slot) Make sure Manual is not selected for Paper Source in the printer driver.
	Clean the paper pick-up rollers.
The machine does not feed paper from the Manual feed slot. (For models with Manual Feed Slot)	Use both hands to push one sheet of paper firmly into the manual feed slot until the top edge of the paper presses against the paper feed rollers. Continue pressing the paper against the rollers until the machine grabs the paper and pulls it in further.
	Put only one sheet of paper in the manual feed slot.
	Make sure Manual is selected as Paper Source in the printer driver.
The machine does not feed envelopes.	Load one envelope at a time in the manual feed slot. Your application must be set to print the envelope size you are

Difficulties	Suggestions
	using. This is usually done in the Page Setup or Document Setup menu of your application.
Print position is misaligned with the preprinted objects.	Adjust the print position using the Print Position setting for each paper tray.



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)



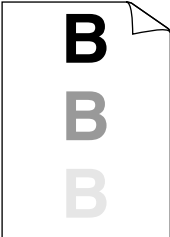
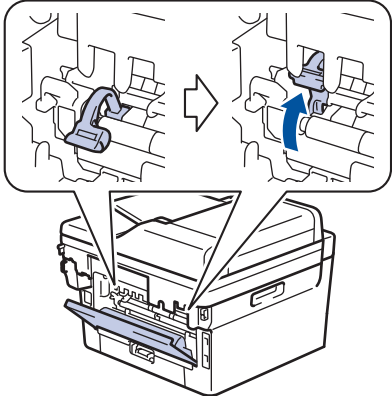
Related Topics:

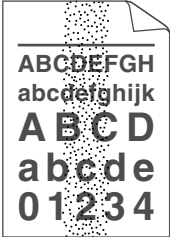

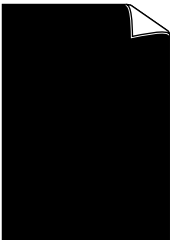



- [Monitor the Status of the Machine from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Cancel a Print Job](#)
 - [Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers](#)
 - [Print a Document \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Change the Default Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Load Paper](#)
-

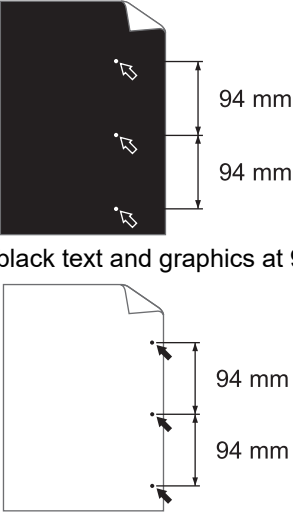
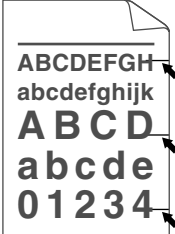
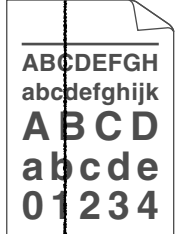

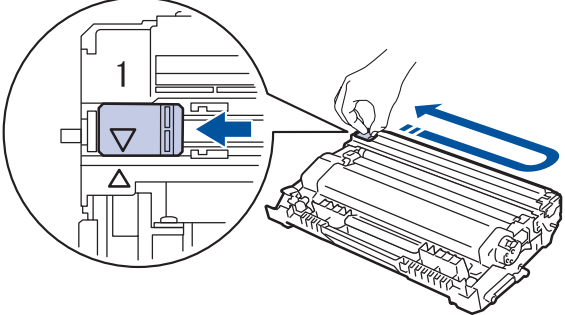
Improve the Print Quality

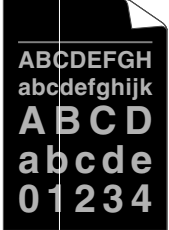

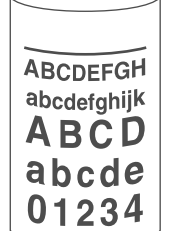
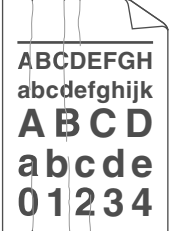
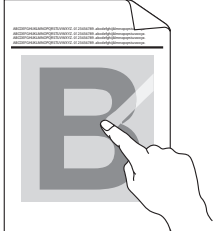
If you have a print quality problem, print a test page first. If the printout looks good, the problem is probably not the machine. Check the interface cable connections and try printing a different document. If the printout or test page printed from the machine has a quality problem, check the examples of poor print quality and follow the recommendations in the table.

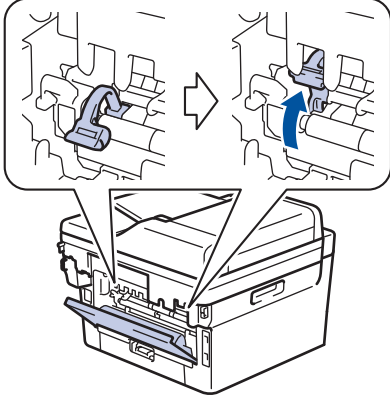

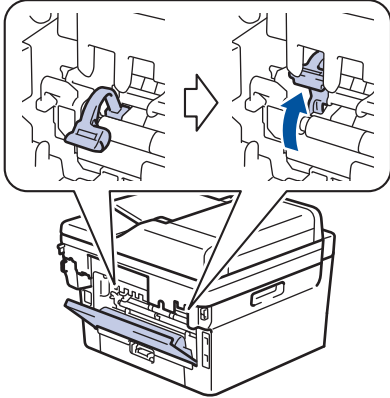
1. To get the best print quality, we suggest using recommended print media. Make sure you use paper that meets our specifications.
2. Check that the toner cartridge and drum unit are installed correctly.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
 <p>Faint</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the machine displays the Replace Toner status, install a new toner cartridge. • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as humidity, high temperatures, and so on, may cause this print fault. • If the whole page is too light, Toner Save mode may be turned on. Turn Toner Save mode off in the machine's menu settings or the printer driver. • Clean the drum unit. • Clean the corona wire on the drum unit. • Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>Grey background</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high temperatures and high humidity can increase the amount of background shading. • Clean the drum unit. • Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>Ghosting images</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as low humidity and low temperatures may cause this print quality problem. • Select the appropriate media type in the printer driver. • Make sure the two green levers inside the back cover are in the up position. Pull up the two green levers until they stop.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the drum unit. • Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit. • Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • The fuser unit may be contaminated.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
 <p>Toner specks</p>	<p>Contact Brother customer service.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the media type setting in the driver matches the type of paper you are using. • Clean the drum unit. • The toner cartridge may be damaged. Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit. • The fuser unit may be contaminated. Contact Brother customer service.
 <p>Hollow print</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Thick Paper mode in the printer driver or use thinner paper than you are currently using. • Select the appropriate media type from the paper type options on your machine. • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high humidity can cause hollow print. • The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>All black</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the corona wire inside the drum unit. • The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>White lines across the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select the appropriate media type in the printer driver. • Select the appropriate media type from the paper type options on your machine. • The problem may disappear by itself. Print several blank pages to clear this problem, especially if the machine has not been used for a long time. • Clean the drum unit. • The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>Lines across the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the drum unit. • The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>White lines, bands or ribbing across the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high humidity and high temperatures may cause this print quality problem. • Clean the drum unit. • If the problem is not solved after printing a few pages, replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
 <p>White spots on black text and graphics at 94 mm intervals</p> <p>Black spots at 94 mm intervals</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make 10-15 copies of a blank, white sheet of paper. If the problem is not solved after printing the blank pages, the drum unit may have foreign material, such as glue from a label, stuck on the drum. Clean the drum unit. <i>See Related Information: Clean the Drum Unit.</i> The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>Black toner marks across the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you use label sheets for laser printers, the glue from the sheets may sometimes stick to the drum surface. Clean the drum unit. <i>See Related Information: Clean the Drum Unit.</i> If you used paper that has clips or staples, the drum unit may be damaged. If the unpacked drum unit is in direct sunlight (or room light for long periods of time), the unit may be damaged. Clean the drum unit. The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>Black lines down the page</p> <p>Printed pages have toner stains down the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the corona wire inside the drum unit by sliding the green tab. <p> Make sure the green tab of the corona wire is in the Home position (1).</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wipe the scanner glass strip with a dry lint free soft cloth. The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit. The fuser unit may be contaminated. Contact Brother customer service.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
 <p>White lines down the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure there is no foreign material, such as a torn piece of paper, sticky notes or dust, inside the machine and around the toner cartridge and drum unit. • The drum unit may be damaged. Replace the drum unit with a new drum unit.
 <p>Image skewed</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set the document correctly in the ADF or on the scanner glass if the skew only occurs when making copies. • Make sure the paper or other print media is loaded correctly in the paper tray and the guides are not too tight or too loose against the paper stack. • Set the paper guides correctly. • The paper tray may be too full. • Check the paper type and quality. • Check for loose objects such as torn paper inside the machine. • If the problem only occurs during automatic 2-sided printing, check for torn paper in the 2-sided tray. Verify the 2-sided tray is inserted completely and the back cover is closed completely.
 <p>Curled or wavy image</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the paper type and quality. High temperatures and high humidity will cause paper to curl. • If you do not use the machine often, the paper may have been in the paper tray too long. Turn over the stack of paper in the paper tray. Also, fan the paper stack, and then rotate the paper 180° in the paper tray. • Open the back cover (face up output tray) to let the printed paper exit onto the face up output tray. • Choose Reduce Paper Curl mode in the printer driver when you do not use our recommended print media.
 <p>Wrinkles or creases</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure paper is loaded correctly. • Check the paper type and quality. • Turn over the stack of paper in the tray or rotate the paper 180° in the paper tray.
 <p>Poor fixing</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the two green levers inside the back cover are in the up position. Pull up the two green levers until they stop.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the media type setting in the printer driver matches the type of paper you are using. • Select Improve Toner Fixing mode in the printer driver. <p>If this selection does not provide enough improvement, change the printer driver setting in Media Type to a thick setting. If you are printing an envelope, select Env. Thick in the media type setting.</p>
 <p>Envelope creases</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the two green levers inside the back cover are pulled down to the envelope position when you print envelopes. After you have finished printing, reset the levers back to their original position. Pull up the levers until they stop.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure envelopes are printed with the back cover (face up output tray) opened. • (For models with Manual Feed Slot) Make sure envelopes are fed only from the manual feed slot.

 **Related Information**

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Related Topics:

- [Test Print](#)
- [Clean the Drum Unit](#)
- [Reduce Toner Consumption](#)
- [Replace the Toner Cartridge](#)
- [Replace the Drum Unit](#)
- [Clean the Scanner](#)

Network Problems

- [Error Messages](#)
- [Use the Network Connection Repair Tool \(Windows\)](#)
- [Check Your Machine's Network Settings](#)
- [If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine's Network](#)

Error Messages

The most common error messages are shown in the table.

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

Error Messages	Cause	Action
Maximum limit of connected devices has been reached.	Four mobile devices are already connected to the Wi-Fi Direct network when the Brother machine is the Group Owner.	After the current connection between your Brother machine and another mobile device has shut down, try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again. You can confirm the connection status by printing the Network Configuration Report.
Connection Error	Other devices are trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network at the same time.	Make sure there are no other devices trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network, and then try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again.
Connection Fail	The Brother machine and your mobile device cannot communicate during the Wi-Fi Direct network configuration.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move the mobile device closer to your Brother machine. • Move your Brother machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area. • If you are using the PIN Method of WPS, make sure you have entered the correct PIN.
No Device	When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, the Brother machine cannot find your mobile device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure your machine and mobile device are in the Wi-Fi Direct mode. • Move the mobile device closer to your Brother machine. • Move your Brother machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area. • If you are manually configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, make sure you have entered the correct password. • If your mobile device has a configuration page for obtaining an IP address, make sure your mobile device's IP address has been configured via DHCP.
Wrong Date&Time, contact your administrator.	The Brother machine does not obtain the time from the SNTP time server.	Make sure the settings to access the SNTP time server are configured correctly in Web Based Management.

DCP-B7658DW

Error Messages	Cause	Action
The maximum number of devices are already connected using Wi-Fi Direct.	Four mobile devices are already connected to the Wi-Fi Direct network when the Brother machine is the Group Owner.	After the current connection between your Brother machine and another mobile device has shut down, try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again. You can confirm the connection status by printing the Network Configuration Report.
Authentication Error, contact your administrator.	Your authentication setting for the Store Print Log to Network feature is not correct.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the Username and Password in Authentication Setting are correct. If the username is part of a domain, enter the username in one of the following styles: user@domain or domain\user. • Make sure the SNTP time server settings are configured correctly so the time matches the time used for authentication by Kerberos or NTLMv2.
Connection Error	Other devices are trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network at the same time.	Make sure there are no other devices trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network, and then try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again.

Error Messages	Cause	Action
Connection Failed	The Brother machine and your mobile device cannot communicate during the Wi-Fi Direct network configuration.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move the mobile device closer to your Brother machine. • Move your Brother machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area. • If you are using the PIN Method of WPS, make sure you have entered the correct PIN.
File Access Error, contact your administrator.	The Brother machine cannot access the destination folder for the Store Print Log to Network feature.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the destination folder name is correct. • Make sure the destination folder is write-enabled. • Make sure the print log file is not locked. If it is, contact your network administrator.
Log Access Error	In Web Based Management, you have selected the Cancel Print option in the Error Detection Setting section of the Store Print Log to Network feature.	Wait for about 60 seconds until this message disappears from the LCD.
No Device	When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, the Brother machine cannot find your mobile device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure your machine and mobile device are in the Wi-Fi Direct mode. • Move the mobile device closer to your Brother machine. • Move your Brother machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area. • If you are manually configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, make sure you have entered the correct password. • If your mobile device has a configuration page for obtaining an IP address, make sure your mobile device's IP address has been configured via DHCP.
Server Timeout, contact your administrator.	The Brother machine cannot connect to the server for the Store Print Log to Network feature.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure your server address is correct. • Make sure your server is connected to the network. • Make sure the machine is connected to the network.
Wrong Date & Time, contact your administrator.	The Brother machine does not obtain the time from the SNTP time server.	Make sure the settings to access the SNTP time server are configured correctly in Web Based Management.



Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)


Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)

Use the Network Connection Repair Tool (Windows)

Use the Network Connection Repair Tool to fix the Brother machine's network settings. It will assign the correct IP address and Subnet Mask.

Make sure your machine is turned on and is connected to the same network as your computer.

1. Launch  (**Brother Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected).
2. Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Network Connection Repair Tool**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.
4. Check the diagnosis by printing the Network Configuration Report or the Printer Settings page.



The Network Connection Repair Tool will start automatically if you select the **Enable Connection Repair Tool** option in the Status Monitor. Right-click the Status Monitor screen, and then click **Other Settings > Enable Connection Repair Tool**. This is not recommended when your network administrator has set the IP address to Static, since it will automatically change the IP address.

If the correct IP address and the Subnet Mask are still not assigned even after using the Network Connection Repair Tool, ask your network administrator for this information.



Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)

Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [My Machine Cannot Print or Scan over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

Check Your Machine's Network Settings

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)

If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine's Network

If you think there is a problem with your machine's network environment, check the following topics. You can correct most problems yourself.

If you need additional help, visit support.brother.com/faqs.

- [I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration](#)
- [My Machine Cannot Print or Scan over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

Turn your wireless router off and back on. Then, try to configure the wireless settings again. If you are unable to resolve the problem, follow the instructions below:

Investigate the problem using the WLAN Report.

Cause	Action	Interface
Your security settings (SSID/ Network Key) are not correct.	<p>Confirm the security settings using Wireless Setup Helper (Windows). For more information and to download the utility, go to your model's Downloads page at support.brother.com/downloads.</p> <p>Select and confirm that you are using the correct security settings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - See the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router for information on how to find the security settings. - The manufacturer's name or model number of the wireless LAN access point/router may be used as the default security settings. - Consult with the access point/router manufacturer, your Internet provider, or network administrator. 	Wireless
Your Brother machine's MAC address is not allowed.	<p>Confirm that the Brother machine's MAC Address is allowed in the filter.</p> <p>You can find the MAC Address on your Brother machine's control panel.</p>	Wireless
Your wireless LAN access point/router is in Stealth mode (not broadcasting the SSID).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the correct SSID or Network Key manually. • Check the SSID or the Network Key in the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router and reconfigure the wireless network setup. 	Wireless
Your security settings (SSID/ password) are not correct.	<p>Confirm the SSID and password.</p> <p>When you are configuring the network manually, the SSID and password are displayed on your Brother machine. If your mobile device supports the manual configuration, the SSID and password will be displayed on your mobile device's screen.</p>	Wi-Fi Direct
You are using Android™ 4.0.	<p>If your mobile device disconnects (approximately six minutes after using Wi-Fi Direct), try the one-push configuration using WPS (recommended) and set the Brother machine as a Group Owner.</p>	Wi-Fi Direct
Your Brother machine is placed too far from your mobile device.	<p>Move your Brother machine within about 3.3 feet (1 metre) of the mobile device when you configure the Wi-Fi Direct network settings.</p>	Wi-Fi Direct
There are some obstructions (walls or furniture, for example) between your machine and the mobile device.	<p>Move your Brother machine to an obstruction-free area.</p>	Wi-Fi Direct
There is a wireless computer, Bluetooth®-supported device, microwave oven, or digital cordless phone near the Brother machine or your mobile device.	<p>Move other devices away from the Brother machine or your mobile device.</p>	Wi-Fi Direct
You have checked and tried all of the above, but your Brother machine still cannot	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn your Brother machine off and back on. Then, try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again. 	Wi-Fi Direct

Cause	Action	Interface
complete the Wi-Fi Direct configuration.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">If you are using your Brother machine as a client, confirm how many devices are allowed on the current Wi-Fi Direct network, and then check how many devices are connected.	

For Windows

If your wireless connection has been interrupted, and you have checked and tried all of the above, we recommend using the Network Connection Repair Tool.






Related Information

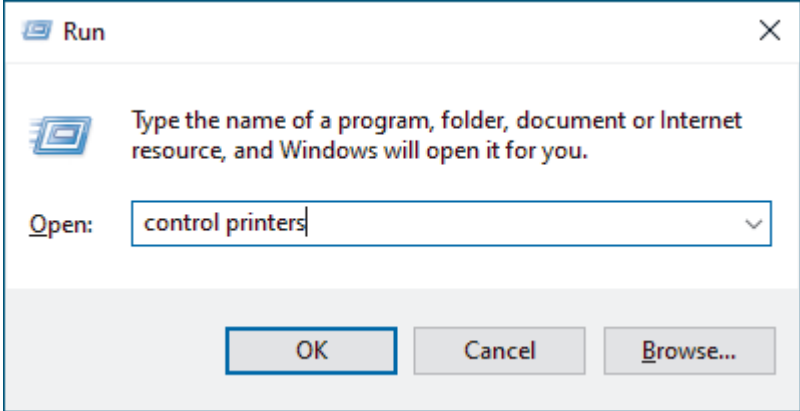

- [If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine's Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
 - [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)
-

My Machine Cannot Print or Scan over the Network

Cause	Action
Your machine disconnects from the wireless network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press WiFi 设置. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Recover WLAN option, and then press OK. When your wireless device connects successfully, the machine displays Connected. DCP-B7658DW <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press  > Recover WLAN. When your wireless device connects successfully, the machine displays Connected.
Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network. (The network scanning feature does not work.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Windows <p>Configure the third-party Security/Firewall Software to allow network scanning. To add port 54925 for network scanning, type the information below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - In Name: Type any description, for example Brother NetScan. - In Port number: Type 54925. - In Protocol: UDP is selected. <p>See the instruction manual that came with your third-party Security/Firewall Software or contact the software manufacturer.</p> Mac (Brother iPrint&Scan) <p>In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications, and then double-click the Brother iPrint&Scan icon. The Brother iPrint&Scan window appears. Click the Select your Machine button, and then follow the on-screen instructions to reselect your network machine.</p>
Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network.	<p>Some security software might block access without showing a security alert dialog box even after successful installation.</p> <p>To allow access, see the instructions for your security software or ask the software manufacturer.</p>
Your Brother machine was not assigned an available IP address.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Confirm the IP address and the Subnet Mask. Verify that both the IP addresses and Subnet Masks of your computer and the Brother machine are correct and located on the same network. For more information about how to verify the IP address and the Subnet Mask, ask your network administrator. Windows Confirm the IP address and the Subnet Mask using the Network Connection Repair Tool.
A failed print job is still in your computer's print queue.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a failed print job is still in your computer's print queue, delete it. Otherwise, select the printer icon in the following folder and cancel all documents: (Windows) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Hold down the  key and press the  key on the computer's keyboard to launch Run. Type "control printers" in the Open: field and click OK.

Cause	Action
	 <p>The Devices and Printers window appears.</p> <p> If the Devices and Printers window does not appear, click View more devices > More devices and printer settings.</p> <p>Mac: Click System Settings > Printers & Scanners or System Preferences > Printers & Scanners.</p>
Your machine is not connected to the wireless network.	Print the WLAN Report to check the error code on the printed report. See <i>Related Information: Print the WLAN Report</i> .

If you have checked and tried all of the above, but you are still having problems, uninstall the drivers (Windows) and the software and reinstall the latest ones.

Related Information

- [If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine's Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Print the WLAN Report](#)
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
- [Use the Network Connection Repair Tool \(Windows\)](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

Check	Action
Check that your Brother machine, access point/router, or network hub is turned on.	Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The power cord is connected correctly and the Brother machine is turned on.• The access point/router or hub is turned on and its link LED is blinking.• All protective packaging has been removed from the machine.• The toner cartridge and drum unit assembly is installed correctly.• The machine's cover is fully closed.• Paper is loaded correctly in the paper tray.• (For wired networks) A network cable is securely connected to the Brother machine and to the router or hub.
Check the Link Status on the Network Configuration Report or the Printer Settings page.	Print the Network Configuration Report and check that Ethernet Link Status or Wireless Link Status is Link OK .
Check that you can "ping" the Brother machine from your computer.	Ping the Brother machine from your computer using the IP address or the node name in the Windows command prompt or Mac Terminal application: ping <ipaddress> or <nodename>. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Successful: Your Brother machine is working correctly and connected to the same network as your computer.• Unsuccessful: Your Brother machine is not connected to the same network as your computer. Windows: Ask your administrator about the IP address and the subnet mask, and then use the Network Connection Repair Tool. Mac: Confirm that the IP address and the Subnet Mask are set correctly.
Check that your Brother machine is connected to the wireless network.	Print the WLAN Report to check the error code on the printed report. See <i>Related Information: Print the WLAN Report</i> .

If you have checked and tried all of the above but you are still having problems, see the instructions supplied with your wireless access point/router to find the SSID (Network Name) and the Network Key (Password) information and set them correctly.



Related Information

- [If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine's Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Print the WLAN Report](#)
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
- [Use the Network Connection Repair Tool \(Windows\)](#)
- [My Machine Cannot Print or Scan over the Network](#)

AirPrint Problems

Difficulties	Suggestions
My machine is not displayed in the printer list.	Make sure your machine is turned on.
	Make sure your machine and your mobile device or Mac are connected to the same network.
	Move your mobile device closer to the wireless access point/router, or to your machine.
I cannot print.	Make sure your machine is turned on.
	Make sure your machine and your mobile device or Mac are connected to the same network.
I am trying to print a multi-page document from an iOS device, but ONLY the first page is printing.	Make sure you are running the latest OS version.




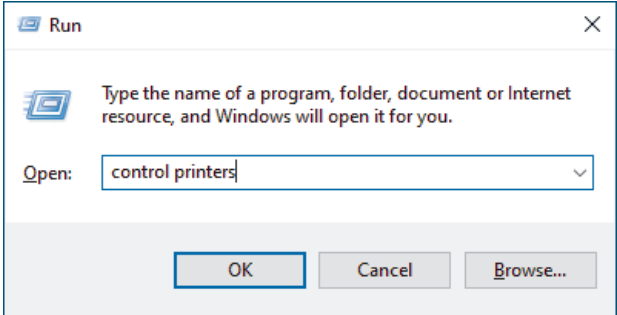


Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Related Topics:

- [AirPrint Overview](#)

Other Problems

Difficulties	Suggestions
<p>The machine will not turn on.</p>	<p>Adverse conditions on the power connection (such as lightning or a power surge) may have triggered the machine's internal safety mechanisms. Unplug the power cord. Wait for ten minutes, then plug in the power cord and press  to turn the machine on.</p> <p>If the problem is not solved and you are using a power breaker, disconnect it to make sure it is not the problem. Plug the machine's power cord directly into a different known working wall electrical socket. If there is still no power, try a different power cable.</p>
<p>The machine cannot print EPS data that includes binary with the BR-Script3 printer driver.</p>	<p>(Windows)</p> <p>To print EPS data, do the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Hold down the  key and press the  key on the computer's keyboard to launch Run. 2. Type "control printers" in the Open: field and click OK. <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">  </div> <p>The Devices and Printers window appears.</p> <p> If the Devices and Printers window does not appear, click View more devices > More devices and printer settings.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Right-click your model's icon with BR-Script3 in the name, select Printer properties. <p> If your model with BR-Script3 in the name does not appear, right-click your model's icon, select Printer properties, and then select your model with BR-Script3 in the name.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. From the Device Settings tab, choose TBCP (Tagged Binary Communication Protocol) in Output Protocol.
<p>The Brother software cannot be installed.</p>	<p>(Windows)</p> <p>If the Security Software warning appears on the computer screen during the installation, change the Security Software settings to permit the Brother product setup program or other program to run.</p> <p>(Mac)</p> <p>If you are using a firewall function of anti-spyware or antivirus security software, temporarily disable it and then install the Brother software.</p>

Copying difficulties

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot make a copy.	Make sure you pressed Copy and the machine is in Copy mode. Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock settings.
Vertical black line appears in copies.	Black vertical lines on copies are typically caused by dirt or correction fluid on the glass strip, or the corona wire is dirty. Clean the glass strip and scanner glass and the white bar and white plastic above them.
Copies are blank.	Make sure you are loading the document correctly.

Scanning difficulties

Difficulties	Suggestions
TWAIN or WIA errors appear when starting to scan. (Windows)	Make sure the Brother TWAIN or WIA driver is selected as the primary source in your scanning application. For example, in Nuance™ PaperPort™ 14SE, click Desktop > Scan Settings > Select to select the Brother TWAIN/WIA driver.
OCR does not work.	Try increasing the scanning resolution.
Cannot scan.	Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock settings.

Software difficulties

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot install software or print.	(Windows) Run the install program again. This program will repair and reinstall the software.



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Check the Machine Information

Follow these instructions to check your machine's serial number and firmware version.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)


DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press **功能**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Machine Info.] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select one of the following options:

Option	Description
Serial No.	Check your machine's serial number.
Version	Check your machine's firmware version.
Page Counter	Check the total number of pages the machine has printed.
Parts Life	Check the supplies' life that remains available.

4. Press **OK**.
5. Press **停止/退出**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.].
2. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description
Serial No.	Check your machine's serial number.
Firmware Version	Check your machine's firmware version.
Firmware Update	Update your machine to the latest firmware.
Firmware Auto Check	View firmware information on the Home screen.
Page Counter	Check the total number of pages the machine has printed.
Parts Life	Check the supplies' life that remains available.

3. Press .



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Update Your Machine's Firmware

To keep your machine up to date, check support.brother.com/downloads periodically for the latest firmware. Without the most current firmware, some of your machine's functions may become unavailable.

You can also update the firmware directly from your machine by following these steps: (DCP-B7658DW)

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.].
2. Press [Firmware Update].
3. Press .

Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Related Topics:

- [Check Your Machine's Password](#)
-

Reset Your Machine

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Initial Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Reset] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the type of reset you want to perform, and then press **OK**.
5. Press the option in the table to reset the machine or to exit the process.

Option	Description
▲	Reset the machine.
▼	The machine will exit and cancel the reset menu.

The LCD displays [Reboot OK?].


6. Press the option in the table to reboot the machine or to exit the process.

Option	Description
▲	Reboot the machine. The machine will begin the reset.
▼	The machine will exit without rebooting.



If you exit without rebooting, your machine will not reset and your settings will remain unchanged.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Reset].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the type of reset functions, and then press the reset function you want to use.
The LCD displays [Machine will reboot after resetting. Press [OK] for 2 seconds to confirm.].
3. Press the option in the table to reboot the machine or to exit the process.


Option	Description
Press OK for two seconds	Reboot the machine. The machine will begin the reset.
Cancel	The machine will exit without rebooting.



If you exit without rebooting, your machine will not reset and your settings will remain unchanged.

4. Press .



You can also reset the Network settings by pressing  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Network Reset].



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Reset Functions Overview](#)

Related Topics:

- [Check Your Machine's Password](#)
 - [Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings](#)
-

Reset Functions Overview

The following reset functions are available:



Unplug the interface cable before you choose Network Settings Reset function, All Settings Reset function or Factory Reset function.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Machine Reset

This function resets the following settings:

Language Setting

2. Network Settings Reset

Reset the print server to its default factory settings (including all IP Address information except the administrator password).

3. All Settings Reset

You can reset all the machine's settings back to the settings that were set at the factory.

All Settings Reset takes less time than Factory Reset.

4. Factory Reset

Use the Settings Reset function to reset all of the machine's settings to the settings originally set at the factory.

Factory Reset takes more time than All Settings Reset.

We strongly recommend you perform this operation when you dispose of the machine.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Machine Reset

You can reset all the machine's settings that you have changed, such as Tray Setting.

2. Network Settings Reset (For Network Models)

Reset the print server to its default factory settings (including all IP Address information except the administrator password).

3. All Settings Reset

You can reset all the machine's settings back to the settings that were set at the factory.

All Settings Reset takes less time than Factory Reset.

4. Factory Reset

Use the Settings Reset function to reset all of the machine's settings to the settings originally set at the factory.

Factory Reset takes more time than All Settings Reset.

We strongly recommend you perform this operation when you dispose of the machine.



Related Information

- [Reset Your Machine](#)

Routine Maintenance

- [Replace Supplies](#)
- [Clean the Machine](#)
- [Check the Remaining Part Life](#)
- [Pack and Ship Your Machine](#)

Replace Supplies

You must replace supplies when the machine indicates that the life of the supply is over.

The toner cartridge and drum unit are two separate supplies. Make sure both are installed as an assembly. The product code of supplies may vary depending on the country.

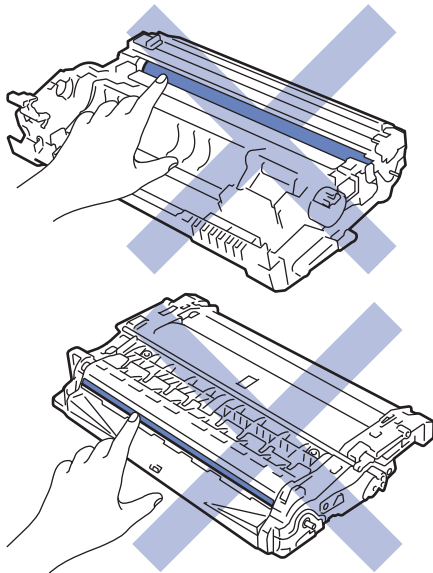
NOTE

- Be sure to seal the used supplies tightly in a bag so that toner powder does not spill out of the cartridge.
- Discard used consumable items according to local regulations, keeping it separate from domestic waste. If you have questions, call your local waste disposal office. Be sure to reseal the consumable items tightly so that the material inside does not spill.
- We recommend placing both the new and the used supplies on a piece of paper to prevent accidentally spilling or scattering the contents.
- Using paper that is not a direct equivalent for a recommended print media may reduce the life of supplies and machine parts.
- The projected life for each of the toner cartridges is based on ISO/IEC 19752. Frequency of replacement will vary depending on the print volume, percentage of coverage, types of media used, and powering on/off the machine.
- Frequency of replacing supplies except toner cartridges will vary depending on the print volume, types of media used, and powering on/off the machine.
- Handle the toner cartridge carefully. If toner scatters on your hands or clothes, immediately wipe or wash it off with cold water.

IMPORTANT

To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustrations.

Drum Unit

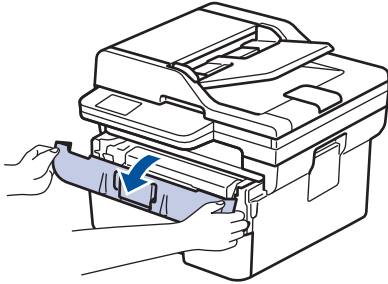


✓ Related Information

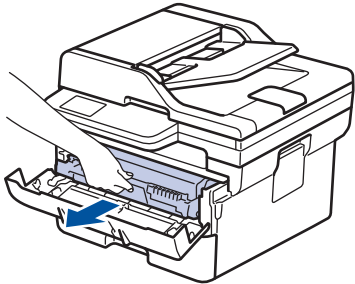
- [Routine Maintenance](#)
 - [Replace the Toner Cartridge](#)
 - [Replace the Drum Unit](#)
 - [Reset the Drum Counter](#)

Replace the Toner Cartridge

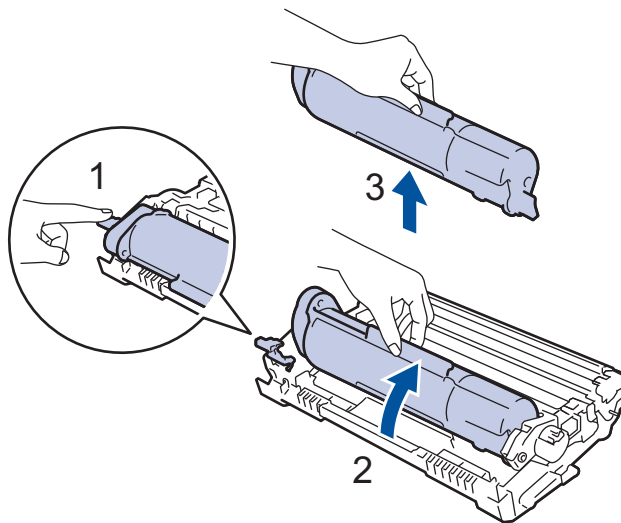
1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Open the front cover.



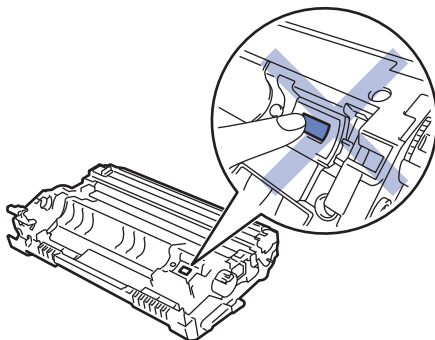
3. Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly from the machine.



4. Push down the green lock lever, and then take the toner cartridge out of the drum unit as shown in the illustration.

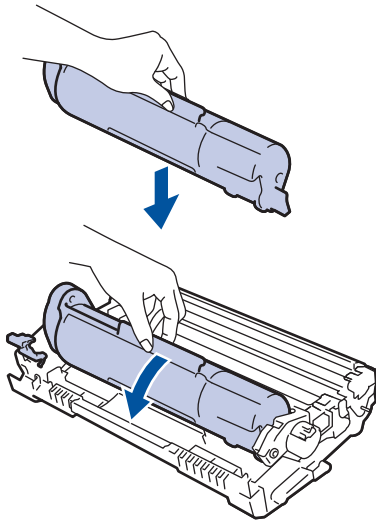



To avoid staining toner on your hands or clothes, DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustrations.



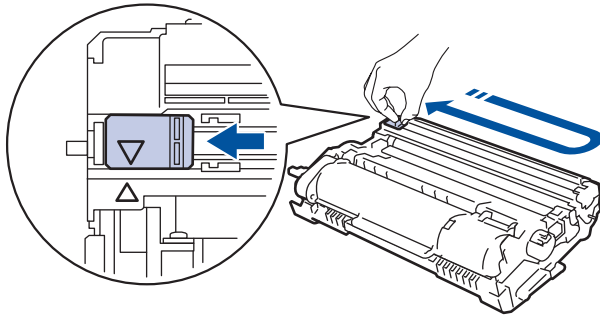
5. Unpack the new toner cartridge.


-
6. Push the new toner cartridge firmly into the drum unit until you hear it lock into place.



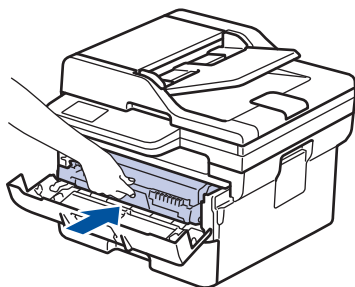
 Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the drum unit. If you put it in properly, the green lock lever will lift automatically.

7. Clean the corona wire inside the drum unit by gently sliding the green tab from left to right and right to left several times.



 Be sure to return the tab to the Home position (▲). The arrow on the tab must be aligned with the arrow on the drum unit. If it is not, printed pages may have a vertical stripe.

8. Reinsert the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back into the machine.



9. Close the front cover of the machine.



-
- After replacing a toner cartridge, DO NOT turn the machine off or open the front cover until the machine's display returns to Ready Mode.
 - The toner cartridge that comes with your Brother machine is an Inbox toner cartridge.
 - It is a good idea to keep a new toner cartridge ready for use when you see the Toner Low warning.
 - DO NOT unpack the new toner cartridge until you are ready to install it.
 - If a toner cartridge is left unpacked for a long time, the toner life will be shortened.
 - We recommend using genuine Brother supplies to ensure stable print quality and performance. Although not all non-genuine supplies may cause quality issues, it is possible that some may adversely affect print quality or cause machine malfunction. Brother may charge for repairing your machine if it is proven that non-genuine supplies caused the damage, even if the machine is still covered by the warranty.
-



Related Information

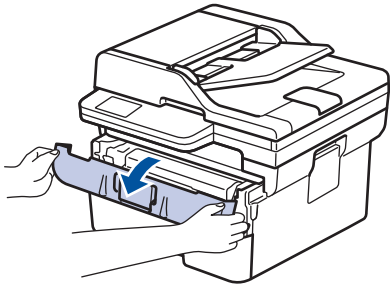
- [Replace Supplies](#)

Related Topics:

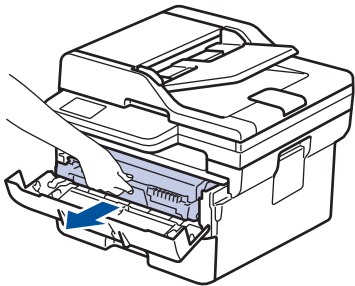
- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)
 - [Improve the Print Quality](#)
-

Replace the Drum Unit

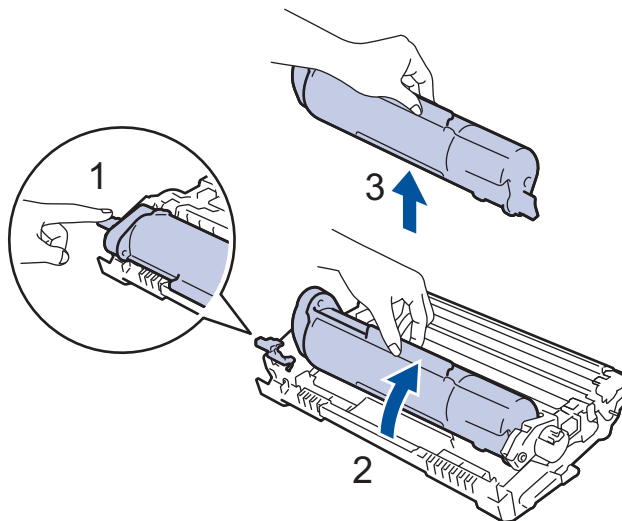
1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Open the front cover.




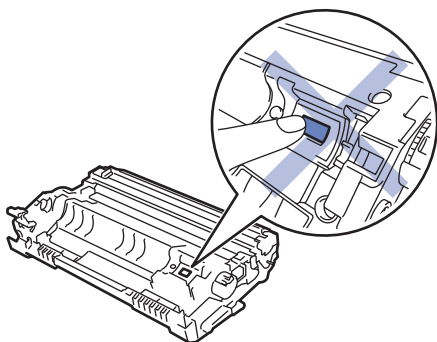
3. Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly from the machine.



4. Push down the green lock lever, and then take the toner cartridge out of the drum unit as shown in the illustration.

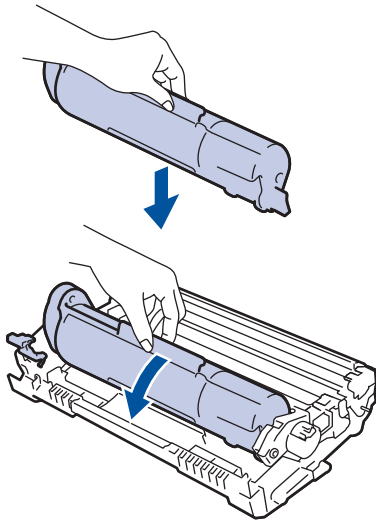



 To avoid staining toner on your hands or clothes, DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustrations.



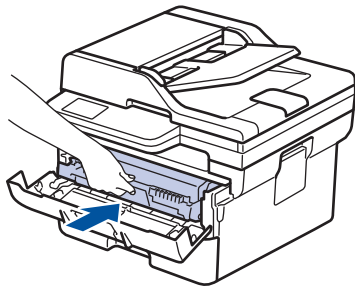
5. Unpack the new drum unit.

6. Push the toner cartridge firmly into the new drum unit until you hear it lock into place.



 Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the drum unit. If you put it in properly, the green lock lever will lift automatically.

7. Reinsert the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back into the machine.



8. Close the front cover of the machine.

NOTE

- Drum wear and tear occurs due to use and rotation of the drum and interaction with paper, toner, and other materials in the paper path. In designing this product, Brother decided to use the number of rotations of the drum as a reasonable determinant of the drum life. When a drum reaches the factory-established rotation limit corresponding to the rated page yield, the product's LCD will advise you to replace the drum. The product will continue to function; however, print quality may not be optimal.
- If an unpacked drum unit is placed in direct sunlight (or room light for long periods of time), the unit may be damaged.
- There are many factors that determine the actual drum life, such as the temperature, humidity, type of paper, type of toner used and so on. Under ideal conditions, the average drum life is estimated at approximately 12,000 pages based on one page per job (A4/Letter single-sided pages). The number of pages may be affected due to a variety of factors including but not limited to media type and media size. Because we have no control over the many factors that determine the actual drum life, we cannot guarantee a minimum number of pages that will be printed by your drum.
- The machine should be used only in a clean, dust-free environment with adequate ventilation.
We recommend using genuine Brother supplies to ensure stable print quality and performance. Although not all non-genuine supplies may cause quality issues, it is possible that some may adversely affect print quality or cause machine malfunction. Brother may charge for repairing your machine if it is proven that non-genuine supplies caused the damage, even if the machine is still covered by the warranty.

Related Information

- [Replace Supplies](#)

Related Topics:

- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)
 - [Improve the Print Quality](#)
 - [Reset the Drum Counter](#)
-

Reset the Drum Counter

When you replace the drum unit with a new one, you must reset the drum counter by completing the following steps:

IMPORTANT



DO NOT reset the drum counter unless you are replacing the drum unit.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Make sure the machine's cover is closed.
3. Press **OK** and **▲** at the same time.
4. Press **OK** to select [Drum].
5. Press **▲** to reset the drum counter.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Close the front cover of the machine.
3. Press  to clear the error.
4. Press  (Toner) until the touchscreen message changes.
5. Press [Drum].
6. Press [Yes].

✓ Related Information

- [Replace Supplies](#)

Related Topics:

- [Replace the Drum Unit](#)

Clean the Machine

Clean the outside and inside of the machine regularly with a dry, lint-free cloth.

When you replace the toner cartridge or the drum unit, make sure you clean the inside of the machine. If printed pages are stained with toner, clean the inside of the machine with a dry, lint-free cloth.

WARNING

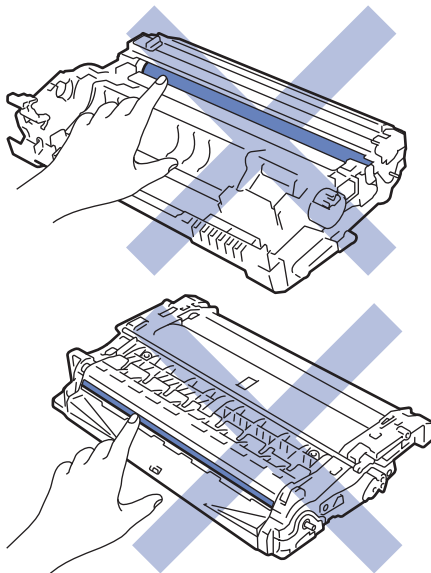
DO NOT use flammable substances, any type of spray, or an organic solvent/liquid containing alcohol or ammonia to clean the inside or outside of the product. Doing so could cause a fire. Instead, use only a dry, lint-free cloth.



IMPORTANT

- DO NOT use isopropyl alcohol to remove dirt from the control panel. It may crack the panel.
- To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustrations.

Drum unit




Related Information

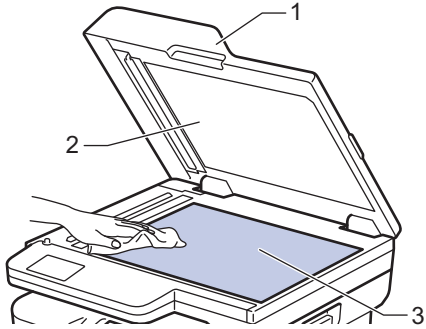
- [Routine Maintenance](#)
 - [Clean the Scanner](#)
 - [Clean the Touchscreen LCD](#)
 - [Clean the Corona Wire](#)
 - [Clean the Drum Unit](#)

-
- Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers
-

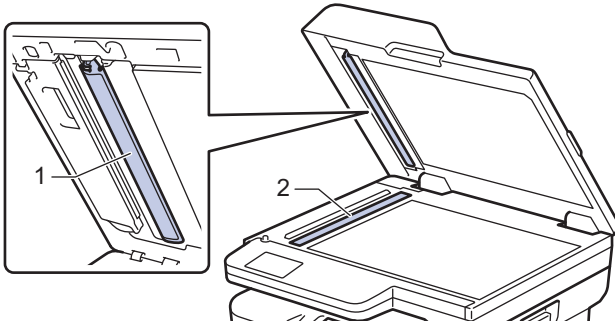
Clean the Scanner

Before starting the cleaning procedure, see *Related Information: Clean the Machine*.

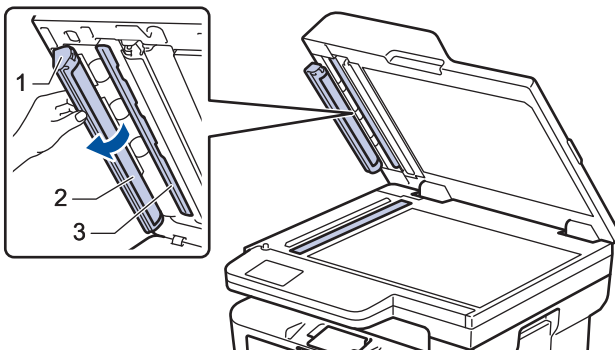
1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
2. Lift the document cover (1). Clean the white plastic surface (2) and scanner glass (3) underneath it with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water.




3. In the ADF unit, clean the white bar (1) and the scanner glass strip (2) underneath it with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water.



4. (For automatic 2-sided scanning models) Open the scanner glass cover (1), and then clean the other white bar (2) and scanner glass strip (3).



5. Close the document cover.
6. Press  to turn the machine on.

Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Improve the Print Quality](#)


Clean the Touchscreen LCD

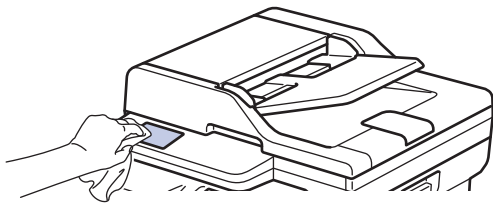
Related Models: DCP-B7658DW


Before starting the cleaning procedure, see *Related Information: Clean the Machine*.

IMPORTANT

DO NOT use any type of liquid cleaners (including ethanol).

1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
2. Clean the touchscreen with a dry, soft lint-free cloth.



3. Press  to turn the machine on.



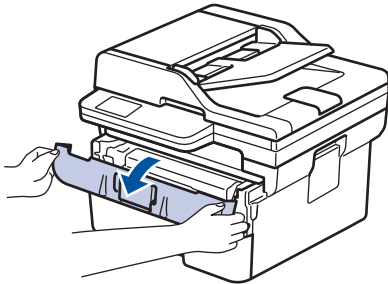
Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

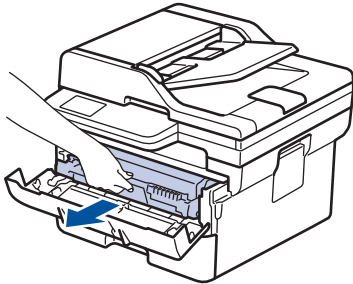
Clean the Corona Wire

If you have print quality problems or the control panel displays [Drum !] status, clean the corona wire.

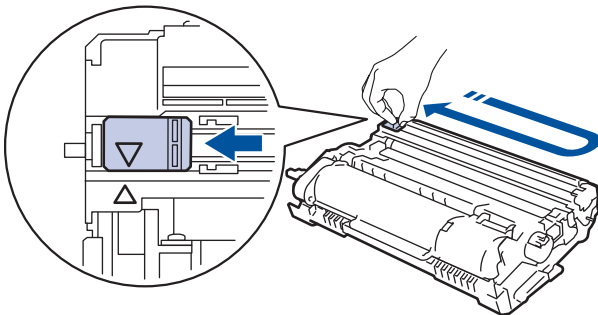
1. Open the front cover.




2. Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly from the machine.

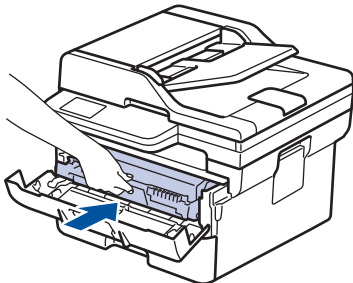


3. Clean the corona wire inside the drum unit by gently sliding the green tab from left to right and right to left several times.



 Be sure to return the tab to the Home position (▲). The arrow on the tab must be aligned with the arrow on the drum unit. If it is not, printed pages may have a vertical stripe.

4. Reinsert the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back into the machine.



5. Close the front cover of the machine.

Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

Related Topics:


- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)

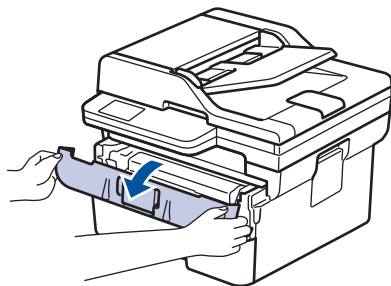
Clean the Drum Unit

If your printout has dots or other repeating marks at 94 mm intervals, the drum may have foreign material, such as glue from a label, stuck on the drum surface.

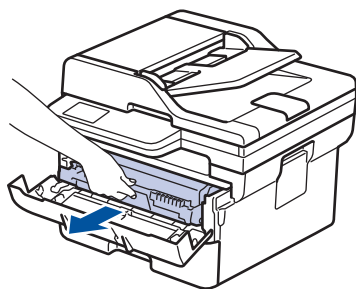
>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

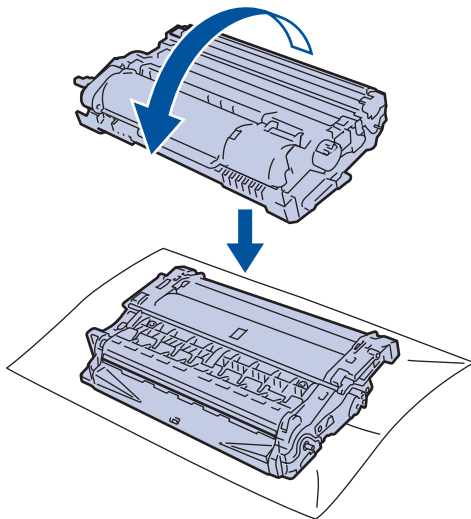
1. Make sure the machine is in Ready mode.
2. Press **功能**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Print Reports] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Drum Dot Print] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press **启动**.
The machine prints the Drum Dot Check Sheet.
6. Press **停止/退出**.
7. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
8. Open the front cover.



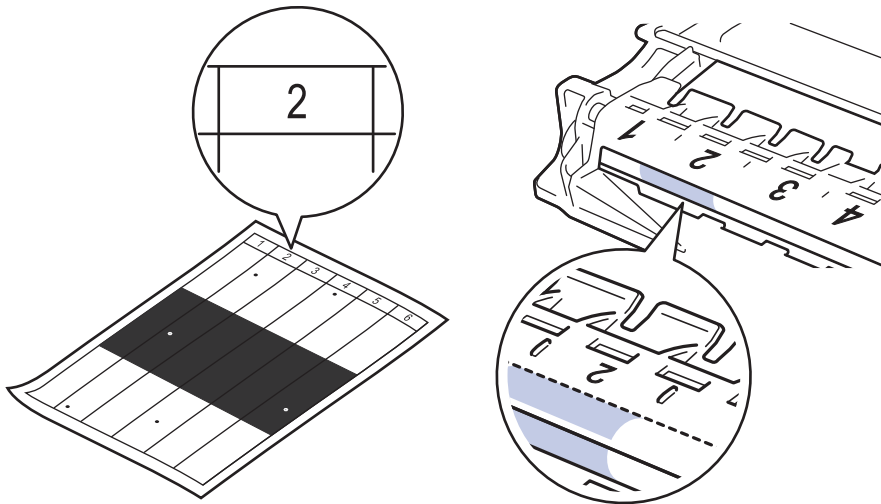
9. Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly from the machine.



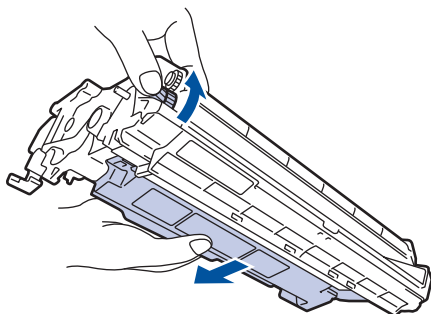
10. Turn the drum unit as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the drum unit gear is on the left side.



11. Use the numbered markers next to the drum roller to find the mark on the drum. For example, a dot in column 2 on the check sheet means that there is a mark in drum region "2".



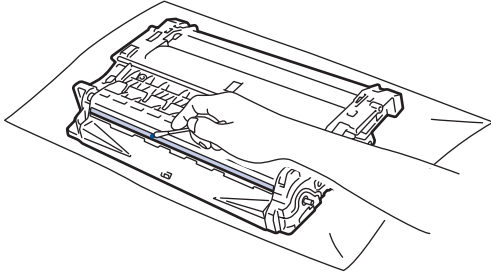
12. Rotate the wheel at the end of the drum unit while pushing the shaded part, as shown in the illustration, to find the mark or foreign material.



IMPORTANT

To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the surface of the drum unit, only the wheel on the end.

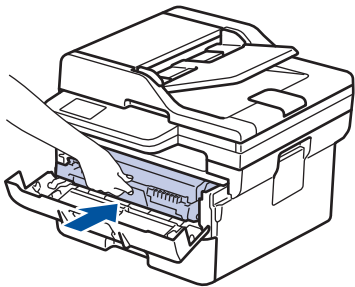
13. Wipe the drum unit surface gently with a dry cotton swab until the mark or foreign material on the surface comes off.




NOTE

DO NOT clean the surface of the photosensitive drum with a sharp object or any liquids.




14. Reinsert the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back into the machine.

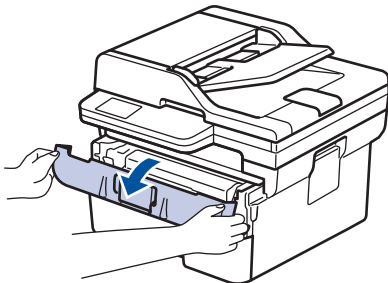


15. Close the front cover of the machine.

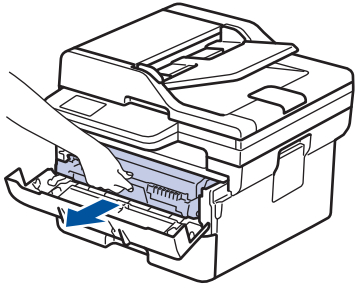
16. Press  to turn the machine on.

DCP-B7658DW

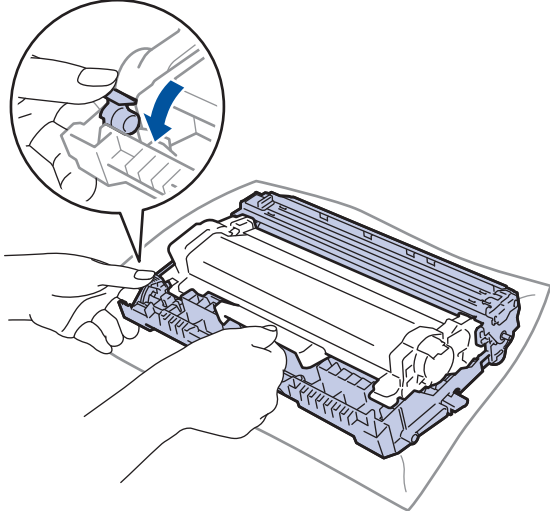
1. Make sure the machine is in Ready mode.
2. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [Drum Dot Print].
3. Press [Yes].
The machine prints the Drum Dot Check Sheet.
4. Press .
5. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
6. Open the front cover.



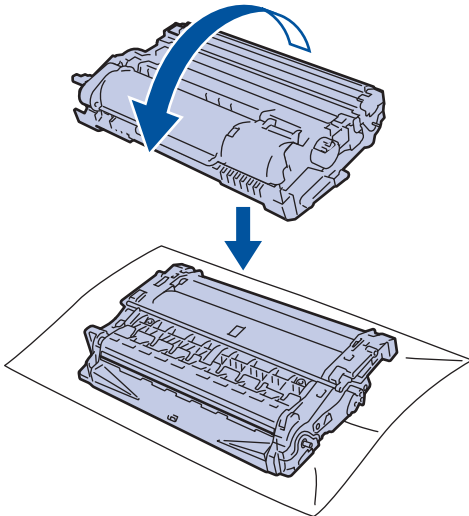
7. Remove the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly from the machine.



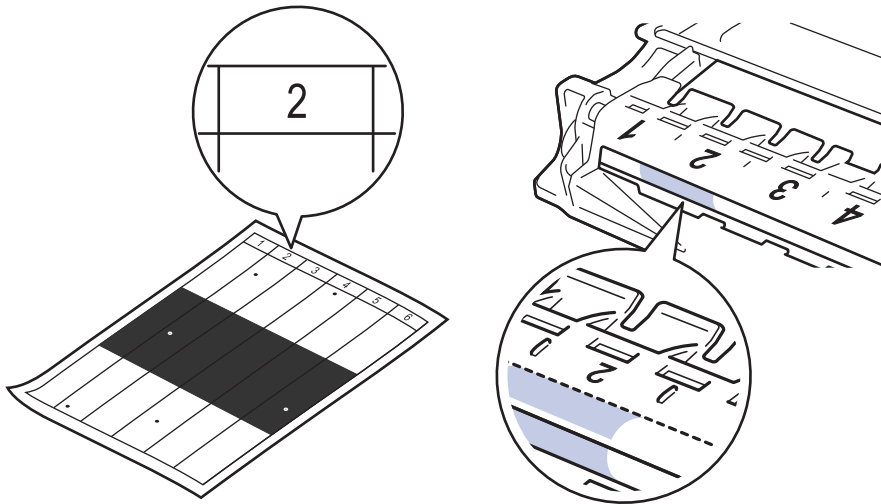
8. Push down the green lock lever and take the toner cartridge out of the drum unit.



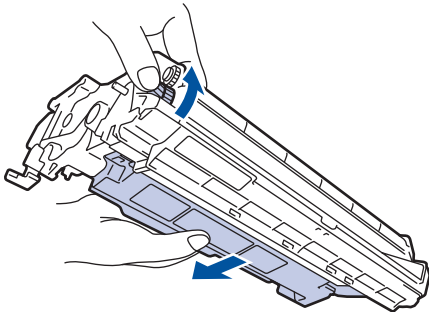
9. Turn the drum unit as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the drum unit gear (1) is on the left side.



10. Use the numbered markers next to the drum roller to find the mark on the drum. For example, a dot in column 2 on the check sheet means that there is a mark in drum region “2”.



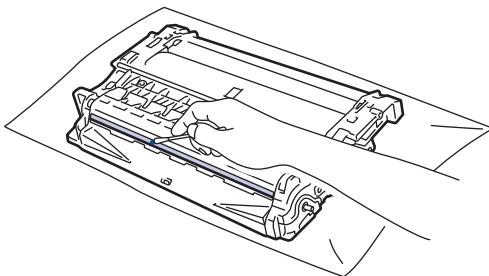
11. Rotate the wheel at the end of the drum unit while pushing the shaded part, as shown in the illustration, to find the mark or foreign material.



IMPORTANT

To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the surface of the drum unit, only the wheel on the end.

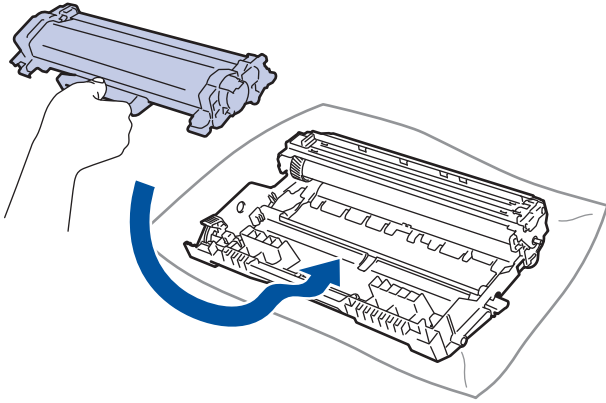
12. Wipe the drum unit surface gently with a dry cotton swab until the mark or foreign material on the surface comes off.



NOTE

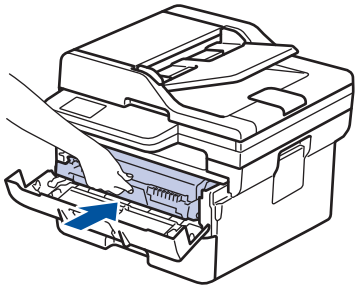
DO NOT clean the surface of the photosensitive drum with a sharp object or any liquids.

13. Push the toner cartridge firmly into the drum unit until it locks into place.




Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the drum unit. If you put it in properly, the green lock lever will lift automatically.

14. Reinsert the toner cartridge and drum unit assembly back into the machine.



15. Close the front cover of the machine.

16. Press  to turn the machine on.



Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

Related Topics:


- [Improve the Print Quality](#)
-

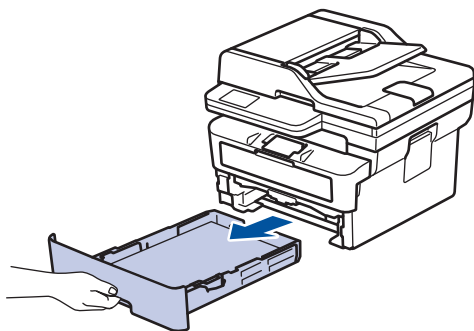
Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers

Cleaning the paper pick-up rollers periodically may prevent paper jams by ensuring that paper feeds correctly.

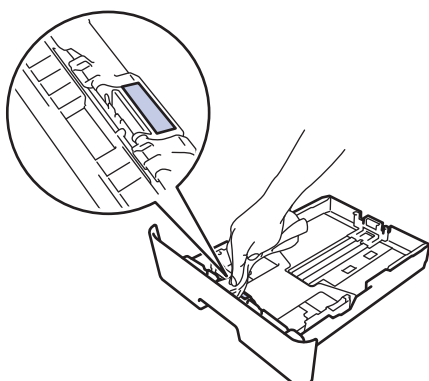
Before starting the cleaning procedure, see *Related Information: Clean the Machine*.

If you have paper feed problems, clean the pick-up rollers as follows:

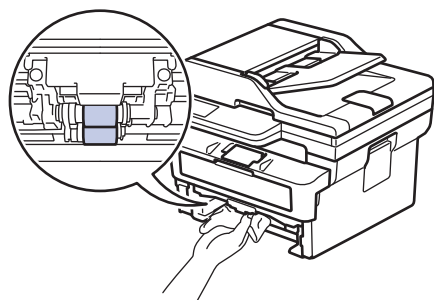
1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.




3. If paper is loaded or something is stuck inside in the paper tray, remove it.
4. Tightly wring out a lint-free cloth soaked in lukewarm water, and then wipe the separator pad on the paper tray to remove dust.



5. Wipe the two pick-up rollers inside the machine to remove dust.



6. Reload the paper and put the paper tray firmly back in the machine.
7. Press  to turn the machine on.

✓ Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)



Check the Remaining Part Life

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW


DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Machine Info.] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Parts Life] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Toner] or [Drum] option, and then press **OK**.
The LCD displays the approximate remaining toner or drum life.
5. Press 停止/退出.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.] > [Parts Life].
2. The LCD displays the approximate remaining drum life.
3. Press .



To display the approximate remaining life of toner cartridge, press  on the LCD, and then press [Toner Life].

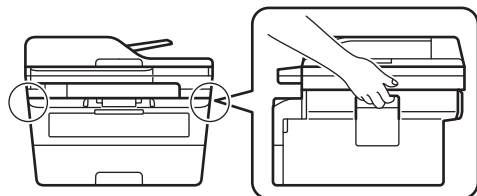
Related Information

- [Routine Maintenance](#)


Pack and Ship Your Machine

WARNING

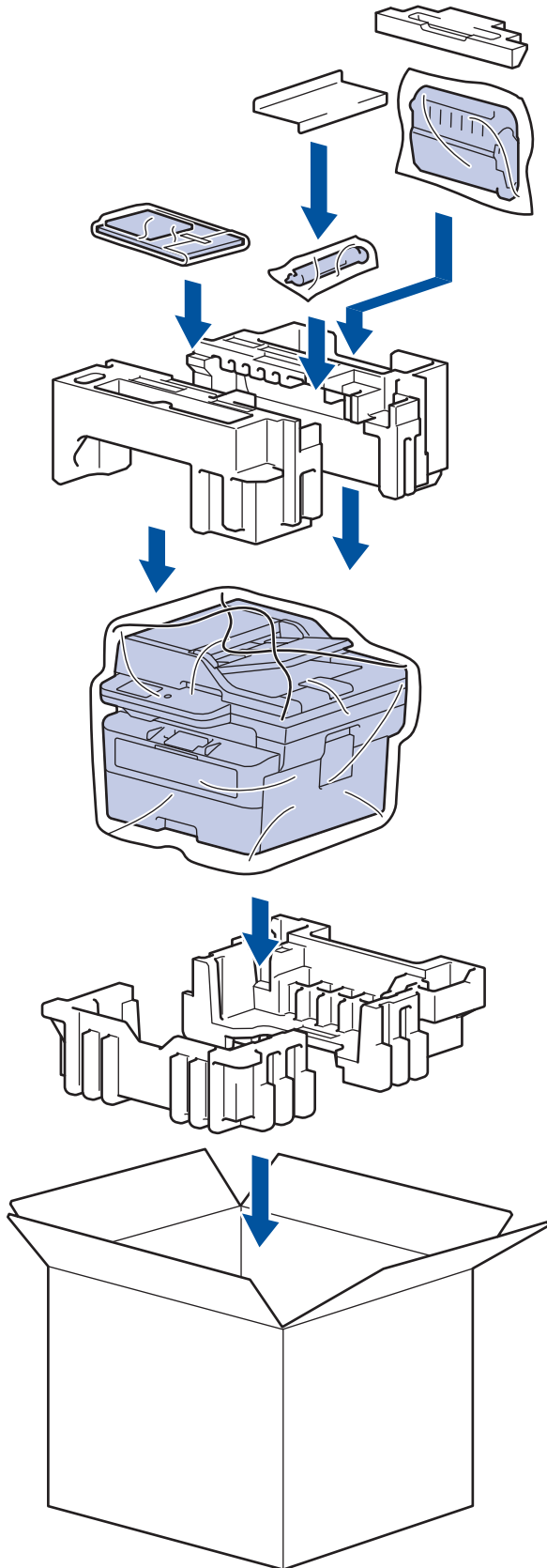
When you move the machine, carry the machine as shown in the illustration.



If for any reason you must ship your machine, carefully repack the machine in the original packaging to avoid any damage during transit. The machine should be adequately insured with the carrier.

1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off. Leave the machine off for at least 10 minutes to cool down.
2. Disconnect all the cables, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical socket.
3. Put the machine into the bag it originally came in.

-
4. Pack the machine, the printed materials, and the AC power cord (if applicable) in the original carton with the original packing material as shown.



5. Close the carton and tape it shut.



Related Information

- [Routine Maintenance](#)

Machine Settings

Customise settings and features to make your machine a more efficient work tool.

- [Check Your Machine's Password](#)
- [Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel](#)
- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Check Your Machine's Password

If prompted to enter a password, check the following information:

>> [Find the Default Password](#)

>> [Change the Password](#)

>> [Reset the Password](#)

Find the Default Password

The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd".

Change the Password

We recommend immediately changing the default password to protect your machine from unauthorised access.

Use Web Based Management to change the password.

For more information, see *Related Information*.

Reset the Password

If you forget your password, reset your machine to its factory default settings. The password will also be reset to the default password.

For more information, see *Related Information*.



Related Information

- [Machine Settings](#)

Related Topics:

- [Update Your Machine's Firmware](#)
- [Reset Your Machine](#)
- [Change the Login Password Using Web Based Management](#)

Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel

- [In the Event of Power Failure \(Memory Storage\)](#)
- [General Settings](#)
- [Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut](#)
- [Print Reports](#)
- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

In the Event of Power Failure (Memory Storage)

Your menu settings are stored permanently, and in the event of a power failure will not be lost. Temporary settings (for example, Contrast, Overseas Mode) are lost.



Related Information



- [Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel](#)
-

General Settings

- [Adjust the Machine's Volume](#)
- [Set Sleep Mode Countdown](#)
- [About Deep Sleep Mode](#)
- [Set Auto Power Off Mode](#)
- [Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness](#)
- [Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On](#)
- [Reduce Toner Consumption](#)
- [Reduce Printing Noise](#)
- [Change the Language on the LCD](#)

Adjust the Machine's Volume

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Beep].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Off], [Low], [Med], or [High] option, and then press the option you want.
3. Press .

Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Set Sleep Mode Countdown

The Sleep Mode (or Power Save Mode) setting can reduce power consumption. When the machine is in Sleep Mode, it acts as if it is turned off. The machine will wake up and start printing when it receives a print job. Use these instructions to set a time delay (countdown) before the machine enters Sleep Mode.



- You can choose how long the machine must be idle before it goes into Sleep Mode.
- The timer will restart if any operation is carried out on the machine, such as receiving a print job.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press **功能**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Ecology] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to display the [Sleep Time] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Enter the length of time (maximum 50 minutes) the machine is idle before entering Sleep Mode, and then press **OK**.
6. Press **停止/退出**.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Sleep Time].
2. Enter the length of time (maximum 50 minutes) the machine will remain idle before entering Sleep Mode, and then press [OK].
3. Press .

Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

About Deep Sleep Mode

If the machine is in Sleep Mode and does not receive any jobs for a certain length of time, the machine will automatically enter Deep Sleep Mode. The length of time is based on your specific model and settings.

Deep Sleep Mode uses less power than Sleep Mode.

Applicable Models	Machine's LCD in Deep Sleep Mode	Conditions That Will Wake the Machine
DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/ DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/ DCP-B7648DW	The LCD displays <i>Deep Sleep</i> .	The machine receives a job. Someone presses a button on the control panel.
DCP-B7658DW	The LCD backlight turns off and the Power LED blinks.	The machine receives a job. Someone presses the touchscreen LCD.




Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Set Auto Power Off Mode

If the machine is in Deep Sleep Mode for certain length of time, based on your model and settings, the machine will go into Power Off Mode automatically. The machine does not go into Power Off Mode when the machine is connected to a network.



To start printing, press  on the control panel and then send a print job.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Ecology] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Auto Power Off] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [8 hours], [4 hours], [2 hours], [1 hour], or [Off] option, and then press **OK**.
6. Press 停止/退出.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Auto Power Off].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Off], [1 hour], [2 hours], [4 hours] or [8 hours] option, and then press the option you want.
3. Press .



Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

If you are having difficulty reading the LCD, changing the brightness setting may help.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [LCD Settings] > [Backlight].
2. Press the [Light], [Med] or [Dark] option.
3. Press .



Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

Set how long the LCD backlight stays on.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [LCD Settings] > [Dim Timer].
2. Press the [10 Secs] , [20 Secs] or [30 Secs] option.
3. Press .

Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Reduce Toner Consumption

Using the Toner Save feature may reduce toner consumption. When Toner Save is set to on, the print on your documents appears lighter.



We DO NOT recommend using the Toner Save feature for printing photo or greyscale images.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Ecology] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Toner Save] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [On] or [Off] option, and then press **OK**.
6. Press 停止/退出.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Toner Save].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .

✓ Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Related Topics:

- [Improve the Print Quality](#)

Reduce Printing Noise



The Quiet Mode setting can reduce printing noise. When Quiet Mode is turned on, the print speed becomes slower. The factory setting is off.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Ecology] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Quiet Mode] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [On] or [Off] option, and then press **OK**.
6. Press 停止/退出.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Quiet Mode].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .

✓ Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Change the Language on the LCD

Change the LCD language if needed.



This feature is not available in some countries.

>> [DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW](#)
>> [DCP-B7658DW](#)

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Initial Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Local Language] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display your language, and then press **OK**.
5. Press 停止/退出.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Local Language].
2. Press your language.
3. Press .

✓ Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW



- [Add Shortcuts](#)
- [Change or Delete Shortcuts](#)

Add Shortcuts

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

You can add the Copy or Scan settings you use most frequently by saving them as your Shortcuts. Later you can press the Shortcut to apply these settings instead of manually re-entering them.

These instructions describe how to add a Copy Shortcut. The steps for adding a Scan Shortcut are very similar.

1. Press  Shortcuts ([Shortcuts]).
2. Press the button where you have not added a Shortcut.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display [Copy], and then press [Copy].
4. Press the copy preset you want.
5. Press  ([Options]).
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the available settings, and then press the setting you want to change.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the available options for the setting, and then press the option you want.
Repeat these two steps until you have selected all the settings and options you want, and then press [OK].
8. When you have finished changing settings, press [OK].
9. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
10. Enter a name for the Shortcut using the LCD, and then press [OK].




Related Information

- [Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut](#)


Change or Delete Shortcuts


Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  Shortcuts ([Shortcuts]).
2. Press a tab from [1] to [3] to display the Shortcut you want to change.
3. Press the Shortcut you want to change.
The settings for the Shortcut you selected appear.



To delete the Shortcut or edit the name, press and hold the Shortcut until the options appear, and then follow the on-screen menus.

4. Press  ([Options]).
5. Change the settings for the Shortcut if needed.
6. Press [OK].
7. When finished, press [Save as Shortcut].
8. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
9. Do one of the following:
 - To overwrite the Shortcut, press [Yes].
 - If you do not want to overwrite the Shortcut, press [No] to enter a new Shortcut name.

Press any  to add a new Shortcut.

Enter a new name using the LCD, and then press [OK].



To edit the name, hold down  to delete the current name.



Related Information

- [Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut](#)

Print Reports

- [Reports](#)
- [Print a Report](#)

Reports

The following reports are available:

User Settings

The User Settings report prints a list of your current settings.

Printer Settings

The Printer Settings report prints a list of your current printer settings.

Network Configuration (Models with network functionality)

The Network Configuration report prints a list of your current network settings.

Print File List

The Print File List prints a list of the fonts and print macro/stream setting stored in the machine.

Drum Dot Print

The Drum Dot Print prints the drum dot sheet, which helps when it is time to clean the drum unit.

WLAN Report (Models with wireless network functionality)

The WLAN Report prints the wireless LAN connectivity diagnosis.



Related Information

- [Print Reports](#)



Print a Report

>> DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW
>> DCP-B7658DW

DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

1. Press 功能.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Print Reports] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the report you want to print, and then press **OK**.
4. Press 启动.
5. Press 停止/退出.

DCP-B7658DW

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the report you want to print, and then press it.
3. Press [Yes].
4. Press .

Related Information

- [Print Reports](#)

Settings and Features Tables

The Settings tables will help you understand the menu selections and options that are found in the machine's programs.

- [Settings Tables \(2 Line LCD DCP models\)](#)
- [Settings Tables \(2.7" Touch Panel DCP models\)](#)
- [Features Tables \(2.7" Touch Panel DCP models\)](#)

Settings Tables (2 Line LCD DCP models)

Related Models: DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW

>> [General Setup]
 >> [Copy]
 >> [Printer]
 >> [Network]
 >> [Print Reports]
 >> [Machine Info.]
 >> [Initial Setup]

[General Setup]

[General Setup]

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions
Tray Setting	Paper Type	-	Set the type of paper in the paper tray.
	Paper Size	-	Set the paper size in the paper tray.
	Print Position	X Offset	Move the print start position (at the upper left corner of pages) horizontally from -500 (left) to +500 (right) dots in 300 dpi.
		Y Offset	Move the print start position (at the upper left corner of pages) vertically from -500 (up) to +500 (down) dots in 300 dpi.
	Check Paper	-	Select whether to display a message telling you to check that the size and type of the paper in the machine and the machine's Paper Size and Paper Type settings match.
Ecology	Eco Mode	-	Turn the following machine settings on at the same time: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2-sided Print:Long Edge ¹(available for certain models) • Sleep Time:0Min • Quiet Mode:On ¹ • Toner Save:On ¹
	Toner Save	-	Increase the page yield of the toner cartridge.
	Sleep Time	-	Set the number of minutes before the machine enters Sleep mode.
	Quiet Mode	-	Decrease printing noise.
	Auto Power Off	-	Set the number of hours that the machine will remain in Deep Sleep mode before going into Power Off mode.
LCD Contrast	-	-	Adjust the LCD contrast.

¹ Changing this setting is possible only after you change certain machine settings in Web Based Management.

[Copy]

[Copy]

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Density	-	Adjust the density.
Quality	-	Choose the Copy resolution for your type of document.
Contrast	-	Adjust the contrast for copies.

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
ID Copy	Density	Adjust the density.
	Quality	Choose the Copy resolution for your type of document.
	Contrast	Adjust the contrast for copies.
	2in1/1in1	Make 2 in 1 ID copies.
Billings Copy (DCP-B7638DN)	Density	Adjust the density.
	2-sided	Turn on or off 2- sided copy.
	Quality	Choose the Copy resolution for your type of document.
	Contrast	Adjust the contrast for copies.

[Printer]

[Printer]

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions
Emulation	-	-	Set the printer emulation mode.
Resolution	-	-	Select a print resolution.
Density	-	-	Increase or decrease the print density.
Print Settings	-	-	Set your print settings to Text or Graphics.
Print Options	Font List	HP LaserJet BR-Script 3	Print a list of the machine's internal fonts.
	Test Print	-	Print a test page.
2-sided (DCP-B7578DW/ DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/ DCP-B7648DW)	2-sided Print	-	Turn 2-sided printing off or on and select flip on long edge or short edge.
	Single Image	-	For a print job where the last page is a 1-sided image, select the 1-sided Feed option to reduce printing time.
Auto Continue	-	-	Select this setting if you want the machine to clear paper size errors, and to use the paper in the tray.
Paper Type	-	-	Set the paper type.
Paper Size	-	-	Set the paper size.
Copies	-	-	Set the number of printed pages.
Orientation	-	-	Set pages to print in either portrait or landscape orientation.
PrintPosition	-	-	Access the Print Position setting menus.
Auto FF	-	-	Allow the machine to print any remaining data automatically.
HP LaserJet	Font No.	-	Set the font number.
	Font Pitch	-	Set the font pitch. (Available only for certain fonts.)
	Font Point	-	Set the font size. (Available only for certain fonts.)
	Symbol Set	-	Select the symbol or character set.
	Table Print	-	Print the code table.
	Auto LF	-	ON: CR -> CR+LF, OFF: CR -> CR
	Auto CR	-	ON: LF -> LF+CR, FF -> FF+CR, or VT -> VT+CR OFF: LF -> LF, FF -> FF, or VT -> VT

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions
HP LaserJet	Auto WRAP	-	Select whether you want a line feed and carriage return when the carriage position reaches the right margin.
	Auto SKIP	-	Select whether you want a line feed and carriage return when the carriage position reaches the bottom margin.
	Left Margin	-	Set the left margin at column 0 to 70 columns at 1 cpi.
	Right Margin	-	Set the right margin at column 10 to 80 columns at 1 cpi.
	Top Margin	-	Set the top margin distance from the top edge of the paper.
	Bottom Margin	-	Set the bottom margin distance from the bottom edge of the paper.
	Lines	-	Set the number of lines on each page.
	Tray Command	-	Select this setting if a tray mismatch appears when you use the HP drivers.
BR-Script 3	Error Print	-	Choose whether the machine prints the error information when errors occur.
PDF	Multiple Page	-	Set the page layout when printing multiple pages.
	PDF Print Opt	-	Set the PDF Print setting to print either comments (Markup) or stamps in the PDF file, along with the text.
	Fit to Page	-	Select if the machine scales or resizes the pages in the PDF file to fit the selected paper size.
Reset Printer	-	-	Restore the machine settings to the factory settings.

[Network]

[Network]

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Descriptions
Wired LAN (DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/ DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW)	TCP/IP	Boot Method	-	Select the Boot method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name. (Up to 32 characters)
		WINS Config	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary WINS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Descriptions
Wired LAN (DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/ DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW)	TCP/IP	APIPA	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.
		IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off.
	Ethernet	-	-	Select the Ethernet link mode.
	Wired Status	-	-	View the current wired status.
	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.
	Set to Default (DCP-B7558W/ DCP-B7578DW/ DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW)	-	-	Restore the wired network settings to the factory settings.
Wired Enable	-	-	Turn the Wired LAN interface on or off manually.	
WLAN (Wi-Fi) (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/ DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW)	Find Network	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings manually.
	TCP/IP	Boot Method	-	Select the Boot method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name. (Up to 32 characters)
		WINS Config	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary WINS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.
	APIPA	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.	
	IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off.	
	WPS/PushButton	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.
	WPS/PIN Code	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN.
Recover WLAN	-	-	Reset and restart your wireless network.	
WLAN Status	Status	-	View the current wireless network status.	

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Descriptions	
WLAN (Wi-Fi) (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/ DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW)	WLAN Status	Signal	-	View the current wireless network signal strength.	
		Channel	-	View the current wireless network channel.	
		Speed	-	View the current wireless network speed.	
		SSID	-	View the current SSID.	
		Comm. Mode	-	View the current Communication mode.	
	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.	
	Set to Default (DCP-B7558W/ DCP-B7578DW/ DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7648DW)	-	-	Restore the wireless network settings to the factory settings.	
WLAN Enable	-	-	Turn the WLAN on or off manually.		
Wi-Fi Direct (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/ DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW)	Manual	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings manually.	
	Group Owner	-	-	Set your machine as the Group Owner.	
	Push Button	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using the one-button push method.	
	PIN Code	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using WPS with a PIN code.	
	Device Info.	Device Name	-	-	View your machine's device name.
		SSID	-	-	View the Group Owner's SSID. When the machine is not connected, the LCD displays Not Connected.
		IP Address	-	-	View your machine's current IP Address.
	Status Info.	Status	-	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network status.
		Signal	-	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network signal strength. When your machine acts as Group Owner, the LCD always indicates a strong signal.
		Channel	-	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network channel.
		Speed	-	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network speed.
	I/F Enable	-	-	Turn the Wi-Fi Direct connection on or off.	
Web Based Mgmt	-	-	-	Enable or disable Web Based Management.	

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Descriptions
				If you enable this function, make sure you specify the connection method to use Web Based Management.
Global Detect	Allow Detect	-	-	Enable or disable Global Detect, a function that detects and notifies the user when the user unintentionally connects to a global network.
	Reject Access	-	-	Disable connections to the global network.
Network Reset	-	-	-	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.

[Print Reports]

[Print Reports]

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
User Settings	-	Print a list of your User settings.
Print Settings	-	Print a list of your Printer settings.
Network Config	-	Print a list of your Network settings.
PrintFileList	-	Print a list of data saved in the machine's memory.
Drum Dot Print	-	Print the Drum Dot Check Sheet.
WLAN Report (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/ DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW)	-	Print the wireless LAN connection results.

[Machine Info.]

[Machine Info.]

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Serial No.	-	Check your machine's serial number.
Version	Main Version	Check your machine's firmware version.
	Sub1 Version	
	Security Ver.	
Page Counter	Total	Check the total number of pages the machine has printed during its life.
	Copy	
	Print	
	Other	
Parts Life	Toner	View the approximate remaining toner life.
	Drum	You can check the percentage of Drum life that remains available.

[Initial Setup]

[Initial Setup]

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Reset	Machine Reset	Restore all the machine settings that you have changed.

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Reset	Network Reset	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.
	All Settings	Restore all the machine's settings back to the factory settings.
	Factory Reset	Restore all the machine's settings to the factory defaults. Perform this operation when you dispose of your machine.
Local Language	-	Change your LCD language.



Related Information

- [Settings and Features Tables](#)
-

Settings Tables (2.7" Touch Panel DCP models)

Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

```
>> [Settings]
>> [General Setup]
>> [Shortcut Settings]
>> [Printer]
>> [Network]
>> [Print Reports]
>> [Machine Info.]
>> [Initial Setup]
```

[Settings]



[Settings]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Toner	Toner Life	View the approximate remaining toner life.
	Test Print	Print a test page.
	Toner Cartridge Check	View the installed toner cartridge information on the LCD, for example, if the toner cartridge is genuine.
Network	Wired LAN	Access the Wired LAN setting menus.
	WLAN (Wi-Fi)	Access the WLAN setting menus.
Tray Setting	-	Access the tray setting menus.
Wi-Fi Direct	-	Access the Wi-Fi Direct setting menus.
Eco Mode	-	Access the Eco Mode setting menu.
All Settings	-	Configure the detailed settings.

[General Setup]

[All Settings] > [General Setup]

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions	
Tray Setting	Paper Type	-	Set the type of paper in the paper tray.	
	Paper Size	-	Set the paper size in the paper tray.	
	Print Position	X Offset		Move the print start position (at the upper left corner of pages) horizontally from -500 (left) to +500 (right) dots in 300 dpi.
		Y Offset		Move the print start position (at the upper left corner of pages) vertically from -500 (up) to +500 (down) dots in 300 dpi.
	Check Paper	-	Select whether to display a message telling you to check that the size and type of the paper in the machine and the machine's Paper Size and Paper Type settings match.	
Beep	-	-	Adjust the beeper volume.	
LCD Settings	Backlight	-	Adjust the brightness of the LCD backlight.	
	Dim Timer	-	Set how long the LCD backlight stays on after returning to the Home screen.	

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions
Screen Settings	Home Screen	-	Set the Main Home screen.
	Scan Screen	-	Set the default Scan screen settings.
	Display Information	IP Address	Select whether or not to display your machine's IP Address on the Home screens.
Ecology	Eco Mode	-	Turn the following machine settings on at the same time: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2-sided Print:Long Edge ¹(available for certain models) • Sleep Time:0 Min • Dim Timer:10 Secs • Quiet Mode:On ¹ • Toner Save:On ¹
	Toner Save	-	Increase the page yield of the toner cartridge.
	Sleep Time	-	Set the number of minutes before the machine enters Sleep mode.
	Quiet Mode	-	Decrease printing noise.
	Auto Power Off	-	Set the number of hours that the machine will remain in Deep Sleep mode before going into Power Off mode. Choose <code>Off</code> if you do not want the machine to go into Power Off mode.

¹ Changing this setting is possible only after you change certain machine settings in Web Based Management.

[Shortcut Settings]

[All Settings] > [Shortcut Settings]

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
(Select shortcut button.)	Rename	Change the shortcut name.
	Edit	Change the shortcut settings.
	Delete	Delete the shortcut.
	Register Card/NFC	Assign a shortcut to an ID card.
	Delete Card/NFC	Remove a shortcut from an ID card.

[Printer]

[All Settings] > [Printer]

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions
Emulation	-	-	Select the emulation mode.
Resolution	-	-	Select a print resolution.
Density	-	-	Increase or decrease the print density.
Print Settings	-	-	Set your print settings to Text or Graphics.
Print Options	Font List	HP LaserJet	Print a list of the machine's internal fonts.
		BR-Script 3	
	Test Print	-	Print a test page.
2-sided	2-sided Print	-	Enable or disable 2-sided printing and choose long edge or short edge.
	Single Image	-	For a print job where the last page is a 1-sided image, select the 1-sided Feed option to reduce printing time.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions
Auto Continue	-	-	Select this setting if you want the machine to clear paper size errors, and to use the paper in the tray.
Paper Type	-	-	Set the paper type.
Paper Size	-	-	Set the paper size.
Copies	-	-	Set the number of printed pages.
Orientation	-	-	Set pages to print in either portrait or landscape orientation.
Print Position	-	-	Access the Print Position setting menus.
Auto FF	-	-	Allow the machine to print any remaining data automatically.
HP LaserJet	Font No.	Font No.	Set the font number.
		Soft Font No.	Set the soft font number. This menu appears if a soft font is installed on your Brother machine.
	Font Pitch	-	Set the font pitch. (Available only for certain fonts.)
	Font Point	-	Set the font size. (Available only for certain fonts.)
	Symbol Set	-	Select the symbol or character set.
	Table Print	-	Print the code table.
	Auto LF	-	ON: CR -> CR+LF, OFF: CR -> CR
	Auto CR	-	ON: LF -> LF+CR, FF -> FF+CR, or VT -> VT+CR OFF: LF -> LF, FF -> FF, or VT -> VT
	Auto WRAP	-	Select whether you want a line feed and carriage return when the carriage position reaches the right margin.
	Auto SKIP	-	Select whether you want a line feed and carriage return when the carriage position reaches the bottom margin.
	Left Margin	-	Set the left margin at column 0 to 70 columns at 1 cpi.
	Right Margin	-	Set the right margin at column 10 to 80 columns at 1 cpi.
	Top Margin	-	Set the top margin distance from the top edge of the paper.
	Bottom Margin	-	Set the bottom margin distance from the bottom edge of the paper.
	Lines	-	Set the number of lines on each page.
Tray Command	-	Select this setting if a tray mismatch appears when you use the HP drivers.	
BR-Script 3	Error Print	-	Choose whether the machine prints the error information when errors occur.
PDF	Multiple Page	-	Set the page layout when printing multiple pages.
	PDF Print Options	-	Set the PDF Print setting to print either comments (Markup) or stamps in the PDF file, along with the text.
	PDF Fit to Page	-	Select if the machine scales or resizes the pages in the PDF file to fit the selected paper size.
Reset Printer	-	-	Restore the machine settings to the factory settings.

[Network]

[All Settings] > [Network]

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Descriptions
Wired LAN	TCP/IP	Boot Method	-	Select the Boot method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name. (up to 32 characters)
		WINS Configuration	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary WINS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.
	APIPA	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.	
	IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off.	
	Ethernet	-	-	Select the Ethernet link mode.
	Wired Status	-	-	View the current wired status.
MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.	
Set to Default	-	-	Restore the wired network settings to the factory settings.	
Wired Enable	-	-	Turn the Wired LAN interface on or off manually.	
WLAN (Wi-Fi)	Find Wi-Fi Network	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings manually.
	TCP/IP	Boot Method	-	Select the Boot method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name. (up to 32 characters)
		WINS Configuration	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary WINS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Descriptions
WLAN (Wi-Fi)	TCP/IP	DNS Server	Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.
		APIPA	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.
		IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off.
	WPS/Push Button	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.
	WPS/PIN Code	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN.
	Recover WLAN	-	-	Reset and restart your wireless network.
	WLAN Status	Status	-	View the current wireless network status.
		Signal	-	View the current wireless network signal strength.
		SSID	-	View the current SSID.
		Comm. Mode	-	View the current Communication mode.
	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.
	Set to Default	-	-	Restore the wireless network settings to the factory settings.
	WLAN Enable	-	-	Turn the WLAN on or off manually.
Wi-Fi Direct	Manual	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings manually.
	Group Owner	-	-	Set your machine as the Group Owner.
	Push Button	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using the one-button push method.
	PIN Code	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using WPS with a PIN code.
	Device Information	Device Name	-	View your machine's device name.
		SSID	-	View the Group Owner's SSID. When the machine is not connected, the LCD displays Not Connected.
		IP Address	-	View your machine's current IP Address.
	Status Information	Status	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network status.
		Signal	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network signal strength. When your machine acts as Group Owner, the LCD always indicates a strong signal.
	I/F Enable	-	-	Turn the Wi-Fi Direct connection on or off.
NFC	-	-	-	Turn the NFC function on or off.
Web Based Mgmt	-	-	-	Enable or disable Web Based Management.

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Descriptions
				If you enable this function, make sure you specify the connection method to use Web Based Management.
Global Detect	Allow Detect	-	-	Enable or disable Global Detect, a function that detects and notifies the user when the user unintentionally connects to a global network.
	Reject Access	-	-	Disable connections to the global network.
Network Reset	-	-	-	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.

[Print Reports]

[All Settings] > [Print Reports]

Level 3	Descriptions
User Settings	Print a list of your User settings.
Printer Settings	Print a list of your Printer settings.
Network Configuration	Print a list of your Network settings.
Print File List	Print a list of data saved in the machine's memory.
Drum Dot Print	Print the Drum Dot Check Sheet.
WLAN Report	Print the wireless LAN connection results.

[Machine Info.]

[All Settings] > [Machine Info.]

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Serial No.	-	Check your machine's serial number.
Firmware Version	Main Version	Check your machine's firmware version.
	Sub1 Version	
	Security Version	
Firmware Update	-	Update your machine to the latest firmware.
Firmware Auto Check	-	View firmware information on the Home screen.
Page Counter	Total	Check the total number of pages the machine has printed.
	Copy	
	Print	
	Other	
Parts Life	Drum	Check the percentage of the supplies' life that remains available.

[Initial Setup]

[All Settings] > [Initial Setup]

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Reset	Machine Reset	Restore all the machine settings that you have changed.
	Network Reset	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.
	All Settings	Restore all the machine's settings back to the factory settings.

Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Reset	Factory Reset	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.
Local Language	-	Change your LCD language.



Related Information

- [Settings and Features Tables](#)
-

Features Tables (2.7" Touch Panel DCP models)


Related Models: DCP-B7658DW

- >> [Copy]
- >> [Scan]
- >> [Apps]
- >> [2 in 1 ID Copy]
- >> [Billings Copy]
- >> [Shortcuts]
- >> [Toner]
- >> Wi-Fi Setup

[Copy]




[Copy]







Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions
Start	-	-	Make a monochrome or greyscale copy.
ID	-	-	Make a copy of the ID card.
 Options	Quality	-	Select the Copy resolution for your document type.
	Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-
		Enlarge	Select an enlargement ratio for the next copy.
		Reduce	Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.
		Auto	Adjust the copy size to fit on the paper size you have set.
	Custom (25–400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.	
	Density	-	Adjust the density.
	2-sided Copy	Layout	Turn off or turn on 2-sided copying and select flip on long edge or flip on short edge.
	2-sided Copy Page Layout	-	Select a page layout option when you make 2-sided N in 1 copies from a 2-sided document.
	Contrast	-	Adjust the contrast.
Stack/Sort	-	Select to stack or sort multiple copies.	
Page Layout	-	Make N in 1 copies.	
Save as Shortcut	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.

[Scan]



[Scan]

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 4	Descriptions
to PC	to File	Other Scan to Actions	-	Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer.
		(Select USB or PC)	 Options	

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 4	Descriptions	
to PC	to File	(Select USB or PC)	Save as Shortcut	Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer.	
			Start		
		to OCR	Other Scan to Actions	(Select USB or PC)	-
	 Options				
	Save as Shortcut				
	Start				
	to Image	Other Scan to Actions	(Select USB or PC)	-	Scan photos or graphics into your graphics applications.
				 Options	
		Save as Shortcut			
		Start			
	to E-mail	Other Scan to Actions	(Select USB or PC)	-	Send a scanned document as an email attachment.
				 Options	
Save as Shortcut					
Start					
to Mobile App	(Select Profile name)	Other Scan to Actions	-	Scan documents to a mobile application.	
		 Options	-		
		Save as Shortcut	-		
		Start	-		
to FTP	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Scan documents directly to an FTP server.	
	(Select Profile name)	 Options	-		
		Save as Shortcut	-		
		Start	-		
to Network	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Send scanned data to a CIFS server on your local network or on the Internet.	
	(Select Profile name)	 Options	-		
		Save as Shortcut	-		
		Start	-		
WS Scan	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Scan data using the Web Service protocol.	
	Scan	-	-		
	Scan for E-mail	-	-		

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 4	Descriptions
WS Scan	Scan for Fax	-	-	Scan data using the Web Service protocol.
	Scan for Print	-	-	

[Apps]



[Apps]

Level 2	Descriptions
Apps	Connect the Brother machine to the Brother Apps service.

[2 in 1 ID Copy]



[2 in 1 ID Copy]

Level 2	Descriptions
2 in 1 ID Copy	Copy both sides of an identification card onto one page.

[Billings Copy]



[Billings Copy]

Level 2	Descriptions
Billings Copy	Copy an identification card and Bills.

[Shortcuts]



[Shortcuts]

Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Descriptions
+	Copy	-	Select the settings you want.
	Scan	to File	Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer.
		to OCR	Convert your scanned document to an editable text file.
		to Image	Scan photos or graphics into your graphics applications.
		to E-mail	Send a scanned document as an email attachment.
		to Mobile App	Scan documents to a mobile application.
		to FTP	Send scanned data via FTP.
		to Network	Send scanned data to a CIFS server on your local network or on the Internet.
This list appears when each Shortcut name is pressed for 2 seconds.	Rename	-	Change the shortcut name.
	Edit	-	Change the shortcut settings.
	Delete	-	Delete the shortcut.

[Toner]



[Toner]

Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
(Toner)	Toner Life	View the approximate remaining toner life.
	Test Print	Print a test page.
	Toner Cartridge Check	View the installed toner cartridge information on the LCD, for example, if the toner cartridge is genuine.

Wi-Fi Setup



(Wi-Fi Setup)

Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
(Wi-Fi Setup)	Find Wi-Fi Network	Configure your wireless network settings manually.
	TCP/IP ¹	Change the TCP/IP settings.
	WPS/Push Button	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.
	WPS/PIN Code ¹	Configure your wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN.
	Recover WLAN	Reset and restart your wireless network.
	WLAN Status ¹	View the current wireless network status.
	MAC Address ¹	View the machine's MAC address.
	Set to Default ¹	Restore the wireless network settings to the factory settings.
WLAN Enable ¹	Turn the wireless interface on or off.	



Related Information

- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

¹ Available after a Wi-Fi® connection has been configured.

Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS).

- [What is Web Based Management?](#)
- [Access Web Based Management](#)
- [Change the Login Password Using Web Based Management](#)

What is Web Based Management?

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS).



- We recommend using the latest version of the following web browsers:
 - Microsoft Edge, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Windows
 - Safari, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Mac
 - Google Chrome™ for Android™
 - Safari and Google Chrome™ for iOS
- Ensure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled, regardless of which browser you use.
- Make sure your machine is On and connected to the same network as your computer, and that your network supports the TCP/IP protocol.



The screenshot displays the Brother Web Based Management interface. On the left is a dark blue sidebar with a 'Logout' button at the top, followed by a 'Home' section containing 'Status' (highlighted in blue), 'Auto Refresh Interval', 'General', 'Copy', 'Print', 'Scan', 'Administrator', 'Brother Online', 'Online Functions', and 'Network'. The main content area is white and titled 'Status'. It includes a 'Device Status' section with a green bar labeled 'Sleep'. Below that is the 'Automatic Refresh' section with radio buttons for 'Off' (selected) and 'On'. The 'Toner Level' section shows a vertical bar for 'BK' (Black) toner. The 'Web Language' section has a dropdown menu set to 'Auto'. The 'Device Location' section has labels for 'Contact :' and 'Location :'. The Brother logo is visible in the top right corner of the interface.

The actual screen may differ from the screen shown above.



Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Access Web Based Management

- We recommend using the latest version of the following web browsers:
 - Microsoft Edge, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Windows
 - Safari, Firefox, and Google Chrome™ for Mac
 - Google Chrome™ for Android™
 - Safari and Google Chrome™ for iOS
- Ensure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled, regardless of which browser you use.
- We recommend using the HTTPS security protocol when configuring settings using Web Based Management. If you use HTTP when configuring settings using Web Based Management, follow the screen prompts to switch to a secure HTTPS connection.
- When you use HTTPS for Web Based Management configuration, your browser will display a warning dialog box. To avoid displaying the warning dialog box, you can install a self-signed certificate to use SSL/TLS communication. For more information, see *Related Information*.
- The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "**Pwd**". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in. We recommend immediately changing the default password to protect your machine from unauthorised access.

You can also find the default password in the Network Configuration Report.

- >> [Access Web Based Management from your Web Browser](#)
- >> [Access Web Based Management from Brother iPrint&Scan \(Windows/Mac\)](#)
- >> [Access Web Based Management from Brother Utilities \(Windows\)](#)

Access Web Based Management from your Web Browser

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "**Pwd**". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.



4. If you want to pin the navigation bar to the left side of the screen, click ☰ and then click 📌.

You can now change the machine's settings.



If the machine is idle for a specified amount of time, the user is automatically logged out. Change the logout settings in the **Logout Time** menu.

Access Web Based Management from Brother iPrint&Scan (Windows/Mac)

1. Start Brother iPrint&Scan.
 - Windows
Launch  (Brother iPrint&Scan).
 - Mac
In the **Finder** menu bar, click **Go > Applications**, and then double-click the iPrint&Scan icon.
The Brother iPrint&Scan screen appears.
2. If your Brother machine is not selected, click the **Select your Machine** button, and then select your model name from the list. Click **OK**.
3. Click  (**Supplies/Machine Settings**).
4. Click **All Settings**.
The Web Based Management page appears.
5. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.


6. If you want to pin the navigation bar to the left side of the screen, click  and then click .

You can now change the machine's settings.



You can also access Web Based Management from Brother Mobile Connect for mobile devices.

Access Web Based Management from Brother Utilities (Windows)

1. Launch  (**Brother Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected).
2. Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Machine Settings**.
The Web Based Management page appears.
3. If required, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click **Login**.



The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in.

4. If you want to pin the navigation bar to the left side of the screen, click  and then click .

You can now change the machine's settings.

If you change the protocol settings, you must restart the machine after clicking **Submit** to activate the configuration.

After configuring the settings, click **Logout**.



Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Create a Self-signed Certificate](#)
- [Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows Users as Administrators](#)
- [Use SSL/TLS](#)

Change the Login Password Using Web Based Management

The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd". Change the default password by following the on-screen instructions when you first log in. We recommend immediately changing the default password to protect your machine from unauthorised access.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is your machine's IP address).

For example:

https://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

For example: https://SharedPrinter

- If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example: https://brn123456abcdef

- The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Do one of the following:
 - If you have previously set your own password, type it, and then click **Login**.
 - If you have not previously set your own password, type the default login password, and then click **Login**.
4. In the left navigation bar, click **Administrator > Login Password**.



- The default password to manage this machine's settings is located on the back of the machine and marked "Pwd".

- If the left navigation bar is not visible, start navigating from ☰.

5. To change the password, type your current password in the **Enter Old Password** field.
6. Following the on-screen **Login Password** guidelines, type your new password in the **Enter New Password** field.
7. Retype the new password in the **Confirm New Password** field.
8. Click **Submit**.



You can also change the lockout settings in the **Login Password** menu.



Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Related Topics:

- [Check Your Machine's Password](#)

Appendix

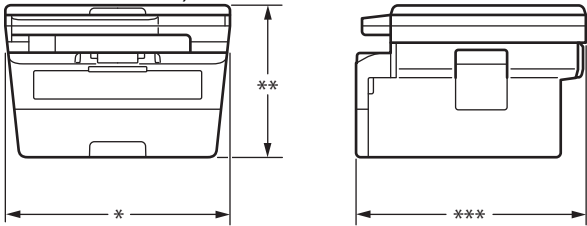
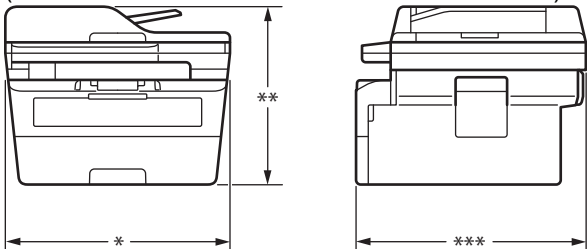
- [Specifications](#)
- [Supplies](#)
- [Notice](#)
- [Brother Help and Customer Support](#)

Specifications

- >> General Specifications
- >> Document Size Specification
- >> Print Media Specifications
- >> Copy Specification
- >> Scanner Specifications
- >> Printer Specifications
- >> Interface Specifications
- >> Supported Protocols and Security Features
- >> Computer Requirements Specifications

General Specifications

Printer Type		Laser
Print Method		Electrophotographic Laser Printer
Memory Capacity	Standard	256 MB
Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW) 10 characters (2 byte) x 2 lines / 20 characters (1 byte) x 2 lines • (DCP-B7658DW) 2.7 in. (67.5 mm) TFT Colour touchscreen LCD ¹
Power Source		220 V to 240 V AC 50/60 Hz
Power Consumption (Average)	Peak	Approximately 920 W
	Printing ²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW) Approximately 440 W at 25°C • (DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) Approximately 470 W at 25°C
	Printing (Quiet Mode) ²	Approximately 270 W at 25°C
	Copying ²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW) Approximately 480 W at 25°C • (DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) Approximately 490 W at 25°C
	Copying (Quiet Mode) ²	Approximately 280 W at 25°C
	Ready ²	Approximately 43 W at 25°C
	Sleep ²	Approximately 4.1 W
	Deep Sleep ²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW) Approximately 0.6 W • (DCP-B7658DW) Approximately 0.7 W

Power Consumption (Average)	Power Off ^{2 3 4}	Approximately 0.08 W	
Dimensions (Typical outline view) (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW)  (DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) 		Unit: mm <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/ DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * : 410 ** : 272 *** : 399 (DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/ DCP-B7658DW) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * : 410 ** : 319 *** : 399 	
Weight (with supplies)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7608W) 10.3 kg (DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW) 10.5 kg (DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW) 11.8 kg (DCP-B7658DW) 12.0 kg 	
Noise Level	Sound Pressure ⁵	Printing	(DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW) LpAm = 48 dB (A) (DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/ DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) LpAm = 49 dB (A)
		Printing (Quiet Mode)	LpAm = 44 dB (A)
		Ready	LpAm = 30 dB(A)
	Sound Power	Printing ⁵	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/ DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/ DCP-B7658DW) LWAc = 6.63 B (A) (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW) LWAc = 6.50 B (A)
		Printing (Quiet Mode)	LWAc = 6.12 B (A)
		Ready	LWAc = Inaudible
Temperature	Operating	From 10°C to 32.5°C ⁶	
	Storage	From 0°C to 40°C	
Humidity	Operating	20% to 80% (without condensation)	
	Storage	35% to 85% (without condensation)	
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)		Up to 50 sheets	

(DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW)	For best results we recommend: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temperature: 20°C to 30°C • Humidity: 50% to 70% • Paper: 80 g/m²
---------------------------------------	---

- 1 Measured diagonally.
- 2 Measured when the machine is connected using the same network connection as the ENERGY STAR Ver. 3.1 test method.
- 3 Measured according to IEC 62301 Edition 2.0.
- 4 Power consumption varies slightly depending on the usage environment.
- 5 Measured in accordance with the method described in ISO 7779.
- 6 To ensure the high print quality, the maximum ambient temperature we recommend is 32.5 °C. The maximum ambient temperature to safely use this machine is 35 °C.

Document Size Specification

Document Size	ADF Width ¹	105 mm to 215.9 mm
	ADF Length ¹	147.3 mm to 355.6 mm
	Scanner Glass Width	Maximum 215.9 mm
	Scanner Glass Length	Maximum 300 mm

¹ ADF models only

Print Media Specifications

Paper Input	Paper Tray (Standard)	Paper Type	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper, Thick Paper
		Paper Size	A4, Letter, B5 (JIS), B5 (ISO), A5, A5 (Long Edge), B6 (JIS), A6, Executive, 16K (195x270 mm), A4 Short (270mm Paper)
		Paper Weight	60 to 163 g/m ² ¹
		Maximum Paper Capacity	Up to 250 sheets of 80 g/m ² Plain Paper
	Manual Feed Slot	Paper Type	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Thick Paper, Thicker Paper, Recycled Paper, Bond, Label, Envelope, Env.Thin, Env.Thick
		Paper Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Width: 76.2 to 215.9 mm • Length: 127 to 355.6 mm • Envelope: COM-10, DL, C5, Monarch
		Paper Weight	60 to 230 g/m ²
		Maximum Paper Capacity	One sheet at a time
Paper Output ²	Face Down Output Tray	Up to 120 Sheets (face down delivery to the face down output paper tray) ³	
	Face Up Output Tray	One sheet (face up delivery to the face up output tray)	
2-sided	Automatic 2-sided Printing	Paper Type	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper
		Paper Size	A4
		Paper Weight	60 to 105 g/m ²

- 1 For paper of 105 g/m² and above, open the back cover to use the face up output tray.
- 2 For labels, we recommend removing the printed sheets from the output paper tray immediately after they exit the machine to avoid the possibility of smudging.
- 3 Calculated with 80 g/m² in a temperate, non humid environment. Actual output tray capacity may vary depending on environmental conditions.

Copy Specification

Copy Width	Maximum 210 mm
Automatic 2-sided Copy	(DCP-B7658DW) Yes (from the ADF)
Sort Copy	Yes
Stack Copy	Up to 99 pages
Resolution	Maximum 600 x 600 dpi
First Copy Out Time ¹	Less than 10 seconds at 23°C

¹ From Ready Mode and standard tray.

Scanner Specifications

Colour / Black	Yes / Yes
TWAIN Compliant	Yes (Windows 10 / Windows 11)
WIA Compliant	Yes (Windows 10 / Windows 11)
AirPrint Compliant	Yes (macOS v11, v12, v13)
Colour Depth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 30 bit colour Processing (Input) • 24 bit colour Processing (Output)
Grey Scale	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 bit colour Processing (Input) • 8 bit colour Processing (Output)
Resolution ²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to 19200 x 19200 dpi (interpolated) • Up to 1200 x 1200 dpi (from Scanner Glass) • Up to 600 x 600 dpi (from the ADF) ¹
Scanning Width	Maximum 210 mm
Automatic 2-sided Scanning	(DCP-B7658DW) Yes (from the ADF)

¹ ADF models only

² Maximum 1200 × 1200 dpi scanning with the WIA driver in Windows 10 and Windows 11 (resolution up to 19200 × 19200 dpi can be selected by using the scanner utility)

Printer Specifications

Automatic 2-sided Print	(DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) Yes
Emulation	PCL6, BR-Script3, PDF Version 1.7
Resolution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Physical resolution: 600 x 600 dpi • Best print resolution: 1200 x 1200 dpi ¹
Print Speed ^{2 3}	1-sided Print ⁴ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW) Up to 30 pages/minute (A4 size)

Print Speed ^{2 3}		Up to 32 pages/minute (Letter size) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) Up to 34 pages/minute (A4 size) Up to 36 pages/minute (Letter size)
	2-sided Print	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (DCP-B7578DW) Up to 15 sides/minute (Up to 7.5 sheets/minute) (Letter or A4 size) (DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) Up to 16 pages/minute (Up to 8 sheets/minute) (A4 size) Up to 17 pages/minute (Up to 8.5 sheets/minute) (Letter size)
First Print Time ⁵		Less than 8.5 seconds at 23°C

1 Data is based on Brother lab test results and may vary from actual print quality due to usage environment and settings. Best print resolution is 1200 x 1200 dpi (measured with print quality set to best mode).

2 The print speed may change depending on the type of document you print.

3 The print speed may be slower when the machine is connected by wireless LAN.

4 These print speeds are for 1-sided printing and measured in accordance with the ISO/IEC 24734 standard.

5 From Ready mode and standard tray.

Interface Specifications

USB	Type: USB Type-B receptacle Version: USB 2.0 High-Speed ^{1 2} Use a USB 2.0 interface cable that is no more than 2 metres long.
LAN	(DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) 10Base-T/100Base-TX ³
Wireless LAN	(DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW) IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n (Infrastructure Mode) IEEE 802.11a/g/n (Wi-Fi Direct®)
NFC	(DCP-B7658DW) Yes

1 Your machine has a USB 2.0 Hi-Speed interface. The machine can also be connected to a computer that has a USB 1.1 interface.

2 Third party USB hub devices are not supported.

3 Use a straight-through Category 5 (or greater) twisted-pair cable.

Supported Protocols and Security Features

Supported protocols and security features may differ depending the models.

Ethernet

10Base-T/100Base-TX

Wireless LAN (2.4GHz)

IEEE 802.11b/g/n (Infrastructure Mode), IEEE 802.11g/n (Wi-Fi Direct)

Wireless LAN (5GHz)

IEEE 802.11a/n (Infrastructure Mode), IEEE 802.11a/n (Wi-Fi Direct)

Protocols (IPv4)

ARP, RARP, BOOTP, DHCP, APIPA(Auto IP), WINS/NetBIOS name resolution, DNS Resolver, mDNS, LLMNR responder, LPR/LPD, Custom Raw Port/Port9100, SMTP Client, IPP/IPPS, FTP Client and Server,CIFS Client, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, HTTP/HTTPS server, TFTP client and server, ICMP, Web Services (Print/Scan), SNTF Client

Protocols (IPv6)

NDP, RA, DNS resolver, mDNS, LLMNR responder, LPR/LPD, Custom Raw Port/Port9100, IPP/IPPS, SMTP Client, FTP Client and Server, CIFS Client, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, HTTP/HTTPS server, TFTP client and server, ICMPv6, Web Services (Print/Scan), SNMP Client

Network Security (Wired)

SMTP-AUTH, SSL/TLS (SMTP, HTTP, IPP, FTP), SNMP v3, 802.1x (EAP-MD5, EAP-FAST, PEAP, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS), OAuth(SMTP, POP3, IMAP4), Kerberos

Network Security (Wireless)

SMTP-AUTH, SSL/TLS (SMTP, HTTP, IPP, FTP), SNMP v3, 802.1x (EAP-FAST, PEAP, EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS), OAuth(SMTP, POP3, IMAP4), Kerberos

Wireless Network Security

WEP 64/128 bit, WPA-PSK (TKIP/AES), WPA2-PSK (TKIP/AES), WPA3-SAE (AES) (Wi-Fi Direct supports WPA2-PSK (AES) only)

Wireless Certification

Wi-Fi Certification Mark License (WPA3™ - Enterprise, Personal), Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS) Identifier Mark License, Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™ Wi-Fi Direct

Computer Requirements Specifications

Supported Operating Systems And Software Functions

For the latest supported OS, go to your model's **Supported OS** page at support.brother.com/os.

Computer Platform & Operating System Version	PC Interface			Processor	Hard Disk Space to Install ¹	
	USB ²	Wired LAN	Wireless LAN		For Drivers	For Applications (including Drivers)
Windows 10 Home / 10 Pro / 10 Education / 10 Enterprise ^{3 4}	Printing Scanning			32 bit (x86) or 64 bit (x64) processor	80 MB	1.8 GB
Windows 11 Home / 11 Pro / 11 Education / 11 Enterprise ^{3 4}				64 bit (x64) processor		
Windows Server 2012	Printing Scanning	Printing		64 bit (x64) processor	80 MB	80 MB
Windows Server 2012 R2						
Windows Server 2016						
Windows Server 2019						
Windows Server 2022						
macOS v11 ⁵	Printing Scanning			64 bit processor	N/A	500 MB
macOS v12 ⁵						
macOS v13 ⁵						

¹ An Internet connection is required to install the software if the installation disc is not supplied.

² Third party USB ports are not supported.

³ For WIA, 1200x1200 resolution. Brother Scanner Utility enables to enhance up to 19200 x 19200 dpi.

⁴ PaperPort™ 14SE supports Windows 10 and Windows 11.

⁵ macOS Disclaimer AirPrint capable: Printing or scanning via macOS requires the use of AirPrint. Mac drivers are not provided for this machine.

For the latest driver updates, go to your model's **Downloads** page at support.brother.com/downloads.
All trademarks, brand and product names are the property of their respective companies.



Related Information

- [Appendix](#)
-

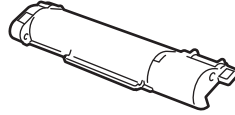
Supplies

When the time comes to replace supplies, such as the toner cartridge or drum unit, an error message will appear on your machine's control panel or in the Status Monitor. For more information about the supplies for your machine, visit www.brother.com/original or contact your local Brother dealer.



Supply product codes vary by country and region.

Toner-Cartridge



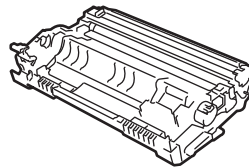
Supply Product Codes	Approximate Life (Page Yield)	Applicable Models
Toner Box: TN-B020	Approximately 2,600 pages ^{1 2}	DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/ DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/ DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW

¹ The approximate cartridge yield is declared in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752.

² A4/Letter single-sided pages

The average inbox toner life is estimated at Approximately 2,600 pages based on 1 page per job [A4 or Letter size single-sided pages].

Drum Unit



Supply Product Codes	Approximate Life (Page Yield)	Applicable Models
Drum Unit: DR-B020	Approximately 12,000 pages ¹	DCP-B7548W/DCP-B7558W/ DCP-B7578DW/DCP-B7608W/ DCP-B7628DW/DCP-B7638DN/ DCP-B7648DW/DCP-B7658DW



Related Information

- [Appendix](#)

¹ Approximately 12,000 pages based on one page per job (A4/Letter single-sided pages). The number of pages may be affected due to a variety of factors including but not limited to media type and media size.

Notice

To create a better environment

Please cooperate.

Firstly, thank you very much indeed for using our Brother products!

Brother focuses on the earth environment concerned. And make a basic policy which is to concern about the earth environment, including any workflow from product development to discard. The local citizen should be responsible for local society and its environment during these environment protection activities.

Therefore, we hope you'll take part in this environment plan, and pay attention to environment protection points as below while discarding used consumables.

1. Please deliver the used package materials to relevant waste disposal office for recycle.
2. When you discard used consumables, please follow and carry on relevant local regulations properly.
3. When the machine need replacing parts for the maintenance and repair, please discard used circuit boards, used electrical parts and products as disposed electrical materials.
4. The power consumption is 0 W after you turn off the machine and unplug it from the AC outlet.
5. Some parts in the machine can be used on the same series model machines which are produced in the same factory.

Note: If you want to replace the parts, please contact Brother Authorized Service Centers.

6. Machines with an LWAd > 63.0 dB(A) are recommended to be set up in separate rooms due to their noise emissions.
7. The machine can use recycled paper.
8. Ensure that during use the machine is used in a well ventilated area.
9. Brother will accept machines and consumables for recycling. For details of the return scheme please refer to the webpage

www.brother.cn/company/info/declaration/20090304.html.



Related Information

- [Appendix](#)

Brother Help and Customer Support

IMPORTANT

For technical and operational assistance, call the call center in mainland China.

To search Frequently asked questions (FAQs)/ASCs/Driver/Manuals, etc, please visit our service website:

support.brother.com

To search where to purchase consumables, please visit the official website of BROTHER (CHINA) LTD.:

www.brother.cn



Related Information

- [Appendix](#)

brother

These machines are approved for use in the country of purchase only. Local Brother companies or their dealers may only support machines purchased in their own countries.



CHN-ENG
Version 0